

NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-NWFSC-1xx

NOAA Fisheries West Coast Region Anadromous Salmonid Passage Design Guidelines

National Marine Fisheries Service

West Coast Region

Oregon & Washington Coastal Office, Environmental Services Branch

California Coastal Office, Environmental Services Branch

PEER REVIEW DRAFT: August 16, 2018



NOAA Fisheries West Coast Region Anadromous Salmonid Passage Design Guidelines

Authors

National Marine Fisheries Service
West Coast Region
Environmental Services Branch

Review Draft August 16, 2018

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
National Marine Fisheries Service

41
42
43
44
45
46

47 For questions or to provide comments please contact the following:

48

49 For Washington, Oregon, and Idaho:

50

51 NOAA Fisheries West Coast Region

52 Environmental Services Branch

53 1201 Northeast Lloyd Boulevard, Suite 1100

54 Portland, Oregon 97232

55 503-230-5400

56

57

58 For California:

59

60 NOAA Fisheries West Coast Region

61 Environmental Services Branch

62 777 Sonoma Avenue, Room 325

63 Santa Rosa, California 95404

64 707-387-0737

65

66 Web address:

67 <http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/>

68

69

70 Suggested citation:

71

72 NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service). 2018. NOAA Fisheries West Coast Region

73 Anadromous Salmonid Passage Design Guidelines, NMFS, WCR, Portland, Oregon

74 **This Technical Memorandum is available at the National Marine Fisheries Service – West**
75 **Coast Region website at:**
76
77 **http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/fish_passage/solutions/index.html**

Table of Contents

79	1	Introduction	1
80	1.1	Statutory Background	2
81	1.2	Biological Background	2
82	1.3	Migration Barriers.....	4
83	1.4	Design Process	5
84	1.5	Experimental Technologies.....	5
85	1.6	Waivers	6
86	1.7	Consultation under the Endangered Species Act	6
87	1.8	Additional Information	6
88	2	Definition of Terms	8
89	3	Design Development.....	17
90	3.1	Introduction.....	17
91	3.2	Design Process	17
92	3.2.1	Preliminary Design	17
93	3.2.2	Detailed or Final Design	18
94	3.2.3	Smaller Projects	19
95	3.2.4	Review Timelines	19
96	3.3	Information Requirements	19
97	3.3.1	Functional Requirements	19
98	3.3.2	Site and Physical Information.....	19
99	3.3.3	Miscellaneous Information	21
100	3.3.4	Operations and Maintenance Information.....	22
101	4	Design Flow Range	23
102	4.1	Introduction.....	23
103	4.2	Design Low Flow for Fish Passage.....	23
104	4.3	Design High Flow for Fish Passage.....	23
105	4.4	Fish Passage Design for Flood Flows	24
106	5	Upstream Adult Fish Passage Systems	25
107	5.1	Introduction.....	25
108	5.1.1	Volitional Passage.....	28
109	5.1.2	Passage of Other Species	28

110	5.2	Fishway Entrance.....	28
111	5.2.1	Description and Purpose	28
112	5.2.2	Specific Criteria and Guidelines – Fishway Entrance.....	29
113	5.3	Auxiliary Water Systems	35
114	5.3.1	Description and Purpose	35
115	5.3.2	Specific Criteria and Guidelines – AWS Fine Trash Racks.....	35
116	5.3.3	Specific Criteria and Guidelines – AWS Screens	36
117	5.3.4	Specific Criteria and Guidelines – AWS Flow Control	36
118	5.3.5	Specific Criteria and Guidelines – AWS Excess Energy Dissipation.....	37
119	5.3.6	Specific Criteria and Guidelines – AWS Diffusers.....	38
120	5.3.7	Specific Criteria and Guidelines – Bedload Removal Devices.....	40
121	5.4	Transport Channels	40
122	5.4.1	Description and Purpose	40
123	5.4.2	Specific Criteria and Guidelines – Transport Channels.....	41
124	5.5	Fish Ladder Design.....	42
125	5.5.1	Description and Purpose	42
126	5.5.2	Common Types of Fish Ladders.....	42
127	5.5.3	Specific Criteria and Guidelines – Fish Ladder Design.....	50
128	5.6	Counting Stations and Windows.....	53
129	5.6.1	Description and Purpose	53
130	5.6.2	Specific Criteria and Guidelines – Counting Stations.....	54
131	5.6.3	Specific Criteria and Guidelines – Counting Windows	54
132	5.7	Fishway Exit Control	55
133	5.7.1	Description and Purpose	55
134	5.7.2	Specific Criteria and Guidelines – Fishway Exit Control.....	56
135	5.8	Fishway Exit Sediment and Debris Management.....	57
136	5.8.1	Description and Purpose	57
137	5.8.2	Specific Criteria and Guidelines – Coarse Trash Rack.....	57
138	5.8.3	Specific Criteria and Guidelines – Debris and Sediment.....	58
139	5.9	Baffled Chute Fishways	59
140	5.9.1	Description and Purpose	59
141	5.9.2	Specific Criteria and Guidelines – Baffled Chutes	59
142	5.10	Nature-Like Fishways.....	65
143	5.10.1	Experimental Fishways.....	66
144	5.10.2	Criteria	66

145	5.10.3	Monitoring and Maintenance	67
146	5.11	Miscellaneous Considerations.....	68
147	5.11.1	Security	68
148	5.11.2	Access	68
149	5.11.3	Edge and Surface Finishes	68
150	5.11.4	Protrusions	69
151	5.11.5	Exposed Control Gates.....	69
152	5.11.6	Maintenance Activities	69
153	5.12	O&M Considerations	69
154	5.12.1	Activity Near the Ladder.....	69
155	5.12.2	Maximum Outage Period.....	69
156	6	Exclusion Barriers	70
157	6.1	Introduction.....	70
158	6.1.1	Fish Safety	70
159	6.1.2	Barriers Used to Collect Information.....	71
160	6.1.3	Other Species	71
161	6.1.4	Flow Range	71
162	6.2	Types of Exclusion Barriers.....	71
163	6.3	Picket and Weir Barriers	74
164	6.3.1	Risk of Fish Impingement.....	75
165	6.3.2	Debris	75
166	6.3.3	Picket Barriers and Fixed Bar Racks	75
167	6.3.4	Diffusers.....	77
168	6.3.5	Horizontal Outlet Diffusers.....	79
169	6.3.6	Fish Weirs	81
170	6.4	Drop Structure Barriers.....	85
171	6.4.1	Orientation of Drop Structure Barriers	85
172	6.4.2	Upstream Impacts	85
173	6.4.3	Combination Velocity and Vertical Drop Barriers	85
174	6.4.4	Vertical Drop Barriers.....	87
175	6.4.5	Velocity Barriers	88
176	6.5	Behavioral Barriers	89
177	7	Adult Fish Trapping Systems	90
178	7.1	Introduction.....	90
179	7.2	Types of Traps	91

180	7.2.1	General Criteria.....	92
181	7.3	Design Scoping	92
182	7.3.1	Purpose.....	92
183	7.4	Fish Handling Criteria.....	93
184	7.4.1	Nets	93
185	7.4.2	Anesthetization.....	93
186	7.4.3	Non-Target Fish	93
187	7.4.4	Frequency.....	93
188	7.4.5	Personnel.....	94
189	7.5	Trap Design Criteria	94
190	7.5.1	Trap Components.....	94
191	7.5.2	General.....	94
192	7.5.3	Pickets	95
193	7.5.4	Trapping Mechanisms.....	96
194	7.5.5	Holding Pools.....	97
195	7.5.6	Crowders	100
196	7.5.7	Brails	101
197	7.5.8	False Weirs.....	103
198	7.5.9	Distribution Flumes.....	104
199	7.5.10	Anesthetic Recovery Pools	106
200	7.6	Lifting Devices.....	106
201	7.6.1	Fish Lifts and Hopper Passage Systems.....	106
202	7.6.2	Fish Lock	107
203	7.7	Single Holding Pool Traps.....	109
204	7.8	Upstream Transportation Criteria	109
205	7.8.1	Maximum Transport Tank Loading Densities	109
206	7.8.2	Transport Tanks	109
207	7.8.3	Release Location.....	110
208	8	Stream Crossings.....	112
209	8.1	Introduction.....	112
210	8.2	Preferred Alternatives for New, Replacement, or Retrofitted Stream Crossings.....	112
211	8.3	Spawning.....	113
212	8.4	Alignment	113
213	8.5	Crossing Length.....	113
214	8.6	Flood Capacity	113

215	8.7	Embedded Pipe Design	114
216	8.7.1	Low Slope Stream Simulation Method.....	114
217	8.7.2	Specific Criteria and Guidelines – LSSS Method.....	114
218	8.8	Streambed Simulation Design Method	115
219	8.8.1	Description and Purpose – Streambed Simulation Design Method	115
220	8.8.2	Specific Criteria and Guidelines – Streambed Simulation Design Method	115
221	8.9	Hydraulic Designs.....	117
222	8.9.1	Description and Purpose – Hydraulic Design Method.....	117
223	8.9.2	Specific Criteria and Guidelines – Hydraulic Design Method.....	117
224	8.10	Retrofitting Culverts	119
225	8.10.1	Hydraulic controls.....	119
226	8.10.2	Backwatering	119
227	8.10.3	Baffles	119
228	8.11	Additional Design Criteria for Road Crossings	120
229	8.11.1	Trash Racks and Livestock Fences	120
230	8.11.2	Lighting.....	120
231	8.11.3	In-Stream Work Windows	120
232	8.11.4	Installation.....	121
233	8.11.5	Construction Disturbances	121
234	8.11.6	Pumps.....	121
235	8.11.7	Wastewater.....	121
236	8.11.8	Other Hydraulic Considerations.....	121
237	8.11.9	Multiple Culverts	122
238	8.11.10	Post-Construction Evaluation and Long-Term Maintenance and Assessment	122
239	9	Grade Control Structures.....	123
240	9.1	Introduction.....	123
241	9.2	GCF Design Guidelines	124
242	9.2.1	Nature-Like Fishways	124
243	9.2.2	Rigid Weirs	125
244	9.2.3	Boulder Weirs	126
245	9.2.4	Channel-Spanning Technical Fishways	127
246	9.3	Specific Criteria	128
247	9.3.1	Hydraulic Diversity.....	128
248	9.3.2	Geomorphic Assessment.....	129
249	9.3.3	Design Flow	130

250	9.3.4	Structural Rock Placement and Spacing	131
251	9.3.5	Particle Size Distribution of Engineered Streambed Material	131
252	9.3.6	Channel Form and Function.....	132
253	9.3.7	Design Must Specify the Selected Roughness	132
254	9.3.8	Velocity.....	133
255	9.3.9	Demonstrated Design Roughness	133
256	9.3.10	Bed Thickness.....	134
257	9.3.11	Energy Dissipation Pools	134
258	9.3.12	Slope Transitions.....	134
259	9.3.13	Quality Control	135
260	9.3.14	Washing and Sealing Bed and Banks.....	135
261	9.3.15	Maintenance and Monitoring	136
262	10	Fish Screen and Bypass Facilities	137
263	10.1	Introduction.....	137
264	10.1.1	100% Flow Screening.....	137
265	10.1.2	Deviation from These Criteria	137
266	10.1.3	Experimental Technology	138
267	10.2	Existing Fish Screens	138
268	10.2.1	General.....	138
269	10.3	Project Design Review.....	139
270	10.4	Structure Placement	139
271	10.4.1	In-Stream Installations	139
272	10.4.2	In-Canal Installations	141
273	10.4.3	Lakes, Reservoirs, and Tidal Areas.....	143
274	10.5	Screen Design Specifications.....	144
275	10.5.1	Approach Velocity	144
276	10.5.2	Effective Screen Area	144
277	10.5.3	Sweeping Velocity	144
278	10.5.4	Flow Distribution	145
279	10.5.5	Active Screen Cleaning Systems (Active Screens).....	147
280	10.5.6	Passive Screens	148
281	10.5.7	Screen Submergence and Clearance	149
282	10.5.8	Screen Material	153
283	10.5.9	Civil Works and Structural Features.....	153
284	10.6	Bypass Systems.....	155

285	10.6.1	Bypass Design.....	155
286	10.6.2	Bypass Entrance.....	155
287	10.6.3	Bypass Conduit and System Design	157
288	10.6.4	Bypass Outfalls	160
289	10.7	Water Drafting	161
290	10.7.1	Water Drafting Operating Guidelines	161
291	10.7.2	Fish Screens for Water Drafting	162
292	10.8	Special Case: Horizontal Screens	163
293	10.8.1	NMFS Engineer Involvement	163
294	10.8.2	Design Process	163
295	10.8.3	General Criteria.....	163
296	10.8.4	Specific Criteria	164
297	10.9	Special Case: Conical Screens	166
298	10.9.1	Locations.....	167
299	10.9.2	Approach Velocity	167
300	10.9.3	Flow Uniformity	168
301	10.9.4	Effective Screen Area	168
302	10.9.5	Submergence.....	168
303	10.10	Project Inspections and Evaluations.....	168
304	10.10.1	General.....	168
305	10.10.2	Quality Assurance and Quality Control	169
306	10.10.3	Inspection.....	169
307	10.10.4	Evaluations.....	169
308	10.11	Operations and Maintenance Plans	172
309	10.11.1	General.....	172
310	10.11.2	Operations	172
311	10.11.3	Maintenance.....	173
312	10.11.4	Maintenance Records.....	173
313	10.11.5	Periodic Visual Inspections.....	173
314	11	Operations and Maintenance	175
315	11.1	Introduction.....	175
316	11.2	General Criteria.....	175
317	11.3	Specific Criteria – Staff Gages.....	175
318	11.4	The O&M Plan.....	176
319	11.4.1	O&M Plan Development and Approval.....	176

320	11.4.2	Group O&M Plans	176
321	11.4.3	General	176
322	11.4.4	Posting the O&M Plan	177
323	11.4.5	Periodic Review of O&M Plans by NMFS	177
324	12	References	178

325
326

327 **Appendices**

328	Appendix A	Near-Field Hydraulics that Affect Salmonid Passage in Tide Gates
329	Appendix B	Infiltration Galleries
330	Appendix C	Experimental Technologies
331	Appendix D	Surface Collection
332	Appendix E	Performing Hydraulic Evaluations
333	Appendix F	Juvenile Fish Collection and Evaluation Facilities
334	Appendix G	Columbia and Snake River Fish Passage Facilities
335	Appendix H	Sizing Fish Ladder Pools Based on Energy Dissipation and Fish Run Size
336	Appendix I	Upstream Juvenile Fish Passage
337	Appendix J	Suggested Reading Materials

338 **List of Figures**

339 Figure 5-1. Components of vertical slot fishway for upstream passage 27

340 Figure 5-2. Plunging (a) and streaming (b) flows in pool and weir style of fishways 33

341 Figure 5-3. Schematic of a fishway AWS diffuser system in plan (a) and section (b) views 38

342 Figure 5-4. Plan view of a vertical slot ladder showing generalized flow paths 43

343 Figure 5-5. Oblique view of a vertical slot ladder baffle when dewatered 43

344 Figure 5-6. Dimensions of a typical vertical slot ladder pool 44

345 Figure 5-7. Examples of pool and weir ladders 46

346 Figure 5-8. Ice Harbor-style weir and orifice ladder (adapted from Gauley et al. 1966) 47

347 Figure 5-9. Overhead views of Ice Harbor-style weir and orifice fish ladders 47

348 Figure 5-10. Pool and chute ladder dewatered (at left) and watered (at right) 49

349 Figure 5-11. Half ladder designs for projects with reduced available fishway flows 50

350 Figure 5-12. Sloping coarse trash rack on a fishway exit channel 58

351 Figure 5-13. Drawings, dimensions, and a photo of a Denil fishway 60

352 Figure 5-14. Examples of ASP fishways 61

353 Figure 5-15. Plan and elevation views of a typical ASP fishway 63

354 Figure 6-1. Classifications of exclusion barriers 72

355 Figure 6-2. Fish weir constructed with pickets in plan (a) and section (b) views 72

356 Figure 6-3. Picket barrier panels under construction at the Slide Creek tailrace barrier located on the
357 North Umpqua River, Oregon 74

358 Figure 6-4. Layout of a horizontal outlet diffuser covering the entrance to a turbine draft tube 80

359 Figure 6-5. Cross sections of rigid and floating picket weirs 82

360 Figure 6-6. Elk Creek Dam picket weir (Elk Creek, Oregon) 83

361 Figure 6-7. Cross section of a combination velocity and vertical drop barrier 86

362 Figure 6-8. Cross section of a vertical drop barrier 88

363 Figure 6-9. Cross section of a velocity barrier 89

364 Figure 7-1. Finger weir schematic 96

365 Figure 7-2. Cutaway of a Vee trap 97

366 Figure 7-3. Cross section of a false weir 103

367 Figure 8-1. Illustration of scour prism concept 117

368 Figure 9-1. Example of hydraulic diversity in a GCF project 129

369 Figure 10-1. Aerial view of the Garden City-Lowden 2 water diversion on Walla Walla River near
370 Touchet, Washington 140

371 Figure 10-2. Bankline screens at the Garden City-Lowden 2 diversion on the Walla Walla River near
372 Touchet, Washington, under construction 140

373	Figure 10-3. Bankline vertical flat plate fish screen sized for 3,000 ft ³ /s (Glenn-Colusa Irrigation District)	
374	along the Sacramento River in California.....	141
375	Figure 10-4. Schematic of a typical fish screen system layout and components at water diversions	142
376	Figure 10-5. Vertical plate screen facility under construction in a diversion canal located on the Santiam	
377	River near Stayton, Oregon.....	143
378	Figure 10-6. Schematic diagram of sliding, overlapping porosity plates used to control porosity and	
379	achieve uniform flow conditions through fish screens	147
380	Figure 10-7. Large-sized rotary drum screen at the Sunnyside Canal located on the Yakima River near	
381	Yakima, Washington.....	150
382	Figure 10-8. Medium-sized rotary drum screen at the Burlingame Diversion located on the Walla Walla	
383	River near Walla Walla, Washington	151
384	Figure 10-9. Rotary drum screens installed in a water diversion canal and operated (i.e., powered) by	
385	paddle wheels.....	151
386	Figure 10-10. Typical end-of-pipe screen equipped with “wagon wheels” to elevate the screen off the	
387	stream bottom.....	152
388	Figure 10-11. Conical screen	167
389	Figure 10-12. Elevation view of a conical fish screen showing the effective depth.....	168
390		

391 **List of Tables**

392 Table 5-1. Dimensions for vertical slot ladder components 44

393 Table 5-2. Dimensions for Ice Harbor fishways 48

394 Table 9-1. Geomorphic Assessment 129

395

Acknowledgments

397 These engineering guidelines were developed through decades of work conducted by past and
398 present NMFS fish passage engineers and biologists who laid much of the foundation for this
399 document. We are grateful for their hard work and dedication. We also thank the numerous
400 tribal, agency, and utility researchers; biologists; and engineers who contributed to an improved
401 understanding of how juvenile and adult salmonids behave when approaching and passing
402 structures. The state of knowledge on fish passage engineering has improved substantially over
403 the course of developing these guidelines and will continue to do so over time as new
404 engineering designs, evaluation techniques, and methodologies are developed and tested.

Acronyms and Abbreviations

°C	degrees Celsius
°F	degrees Fahrenheit
ASP	Alaska steeppass
AWS	auxiliary water system or auxiliary water supply system
BOR	U.S. Bureau of Reclamation
ft ³ /s	cubic feet per second
EDF	energy dissipation factor
ESA	Endangered Species Act
FERC	Federal Energy Regulatory Commission
FERL	Fisheries-Engineering Research Laboratory
FPA	Federal Power Act
ft ²	square foot
ft ³	cubic foot
ft/s	foot per second
ft-lb/ft ³ /s	foot pounds per cubic foot of flow per second
GCF	grade control fishway
gpm	gallon per minute
HDM	Hydraulic Design Method
HGMP	Hatchery and Genetic Management Plan
lb	pound
LSSS	Low Slope Stream Simulation
MSA	Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act
mm	millimeter
NLF	nature-like fishway
NMFS	National Marine Fisheries Service

NOAA	National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
O&M	operations and maintenance
PIT	passive integrated transponder
R/D	ratio of radius of curvature to pipe diameter
SSD	Stream Simulation Design
USACE	U.S. Army Corps of Engineers
VFD	variable frequency drive
WCR	West Coast Region

407

1 Introduction

408 This document provides formal criteria and additional guidelines for the design and
409 operation of facilities at barriers to fish migration and water intakes in California, Washington,
410 Oregon, and Idaho. The facilities are designed to create safe passage routes for adult and
411 juvenile salmonids in rivers and streams and through reservoirs, restore habitat connectivity
412 within watersheds, and enhance salmonid population productivity. The National Marine
413 Fisheries Service (NMFS) will use the criteria and guidelines to advise project applicants on the
414 design of future fish passage projects and modifications to existing projects. The criteria are
415 based on decades of experience developing, testing, and operating fish passage systems.

416 In 2014, the Northwest and Southwest regions of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric
417 Administration's (NOAA) NMFS were merged to form the West Coast Region (WCR). The fish
418 passage design criteria and guidelines of the two former regions have been integrated into this
419 draft *NOAA Fisheries West Coast Region Anadromous Salmonid Passage Design Guidelines*
420 document, which supersedes the following design documents:

- 421 · Northwest Region's *Anadromous Salmonid Passage Facility Design*, dated July 2011
- 422 · Southwest Region's *Fish Screening Criteria for Anadromous Salmonids*, dated January 1997
- 423 · Southwest Region's *Guidelines for Salmonid Passage at Stream Crossings*, dated
424 September 2001
- 425 · Southwest Region's Experimental Fish Guidance Position Statement, dated January 1994
- 426 · Southwest Region's Water Drafting Specifications, dated August 2001

427 This document is divided into introductory chapters, technical chapters, and appendices.
428 The introductory chapters (Chapters 1 and 2) provide the statutory and biological background for
429 the requirement to provide safe, timely, and effective passage of salmonids around barriers and
430 definitions of key terms. The technical chapters (Chapters 3 through 11) present design criteria
431 and guidelines that result in hydraulic conditions salmonid fish require to successfully pass
432 barriers and minimize impacts to populations, along with the scientific basis for criteria for
433 which applicable references are available. The appendices provide information on aspects of fish
434 passage facility design that are under development and may change over time after additional
435 testing. Additionally, the appendices contain background information that was removed from the
436 technical chapters to make the chapters more streamlined, but still needs to be available to the
437 reader because the information is informative and relevant.

438 Throughout the chapters all formal criteria are italicized to be easily identifiable. In
439 addition, chapter and appendix sections are cross-referenced where applicable. For example, the
440 chapter on stream crossings may direct the reader to the chapter on grade control so a reader
441 interested in stream crossings will understand that additional information is available in another
442 chapter.

443 NMFS has separated these fish passage engineering guidelines into two volumes.
444 Volume 1 represents guidelines that are based on decades of research, monitoring, and NMFS'
445 experience with these types of passage systems. NMFS considers material in Volume 1 to be in
446 a mature state and does not anticipate it will change significantly over time.

447 The guidance in Chapter 4 applies to projects located in Washington, Oregon, and Idaho
448 over the range of anadromous salmonid habitat. Due to significantly different hydrologic
449 conditions and species-specific management considerations, projects in California should refer
450 to: *Hydrologic Considerations for Design of Anadromous Fish Passage Facilities in California*.

451 Volume 2 represents a growing body of work that NMFS expects will expand
452 significantly in the future. Separating these guidelines into two volumes will allow NMFS to
453 refine and expand Volume 2 in the near future as new information becomes available, without
454 having to reopen and modify the entire guidelines document. Volume 2 includes Chapters 8
455 (Stream Crossings) and 9 (Grade Control Fishways).

456 The guidance in Chapter 8 and 9 applies to projects located in Washington, Oregon, and
457 Idaho over the range of anadromous salmonid habitat. Given significantly different hydrologic
458 conditions and species-specific management considerations, projects in California should
459 continue to refer to: *Guidelines for Salmonid Passage at Stream Crossings* (NMFS 2001).

460 The criteria and guidelines in Volume 1 were developed based on 60 years of agency
461 experience in creating successful fish facility designs and have been further refined through a
462 collaborative process with regional fish facility design experts. The criteria and guidelines in
463 Volume 2 address more emerging fields of fish passage engineering. The criteria and rationale
464 provided in both volumes will be revised as needed if new information suggests that updated
465 criteria would further improve passage conditions for fish.

466 **1.1 Statutory Background**

467 NMFS is mandated by U.S. Congress to manage, conserve, and protect living marine
468 resources within the U.S. Exclusive Economic Zone. NMFS is authorized to conduct these
469 actions under the Federal Power Act (FPA; administered by the Federal Energy Regulatory
470 Commission [FERC]), the Fish and Wildlife Coordination Act (administered by the U.S. Fish
471 and Wildlife Service), the Endangered Species Act (ESA), and the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery
472 Conservation and Management Act (MSA). This document provides formal criteria and
473 guidelines to project proponents on the design of fish passage facilities that result in safe, timely,
474 and effective fish passage, consistent with NMFS responsibilities under the ESA, FPA, and
475 MSA. NMFS also provides support and advice to states regarding the management of living
476 marine resources in areas under state jurisdiction. This includes salmon (*Oncorhynchus spp.*)
477 and steelhead (*O. mykiss*) due to their economic, cultural, recreational, and symbolic importance
478 to society (NRC 1996).

479 **1.2 Biological Background**

480 Fish species within the family Salmonidae spawn in freshwater. Some species spend
481 their entire lives in freshwater. Others spend a portion of their lives in marine waters where they

482 grow and become sexually mature before returning to freshwater to spawn (Quinn 2005). The
483 life history pattern that involves marine residence is known as anadromy, and salmonid species
484 that display this pattern are referred to as anadromous salmonids.

485 NMFS has identified several key parameters that are used to judge the overall status and
486 viability of salmon and steelhead populations. These include abundance, genetic diversity and
487 life history diversity, productivity, and spatial structure (McElhany et al. 2000). NMFS
488 considers a population to be viable if over a 100-year timeframe it can withstand threats and the
489 risk of extinction from demographic variation, local environmental variation, and genetic
490 diversity changes (McElhany et al. 2000). For examples of how these population parameters are
491 used in viability assessments and recovery planning, see Lindley et al. (2007) and NMFS (2014).
492 NMFS assesses any effects of barriers to migration and water intake structures on anadromous
493 salmonids in the context of these parameters and overall population viability. The viability
494 parameters are briefly described as follows:

495 Abundance. This is a commonly used species conservation and management parameter
496 that refers to the number of organisms in a population.

497 Genetic diversity and life history diversity. Diversity refers to the distribution of traits
498 within and among populations, which range in scale from DNA sequence variation at single
499 genes to complex life history traits (McElhany et al. 2000). Genetic diversity and life history
500 diversity are interrelated; thus, this parameter is not as straightforward as abundance. For
501 example, a unique characteristic of anadromous salmonids is their high degree of fidelity to natal
502 streams or rivers (Quinn 2005), which is a genotypic trait. This trait in turn facilitates local
503 adaptations that result in phenotypic expressions of highly variable life history patterns
504 (Taylor 1991; Waples 1991).

505 Life history diversity is often cited as a crucial component of salmonid population
506 resiliency. This is based on evidence that maintaining multiple and diverse salmon stocks that
507 fluctuate independently of each other reduces extinction risk and long-term variation in regional
508 abundances (Roff 1992; Hanski 1998; Hilborn et al. 2003). Schindler et al. (2010) describe this
509 as the portfolio effect, where risk is spread across multiple stocks. Preserving and restoring life
510 history diversity is an integral goal of many salmonid conservation programs (Ruckelshaus et al.
511 2002). In addition, it is increasingly recognized that strengthening a population's resilience to
512 environmental variability, including climate change, will require expanding habitat opportunities
513 to allow a population to express and maintain its full suite of life history strategies (Bottom et al.
514 2011).

515 Productivity. Productivity represents the ability of a population to grow when conditions
516 are suitable, which is essential to conservation success. In the absence of density-dependent
517 factors, productivity is a measure of a population's ability to survive to reproduce and its
518 reproductive success (McElhany et al. 2000). Populations that are below cohort replacement rate
519 or have limited ability to respond to favorable environmental conditions are less viable and at
520 higher risk of extinction.

521 Spatial structure. This parameter refers to the geographic distribution of individuals in a
522 population or populations. A population's spatial structure comprises the geographic distribution

560

1.4 Design Process

561 Resolving impacts on salmonid migrations from barriers involves the integration of
562 information on fish behavior and physiology, biomechanics, hydraulic and hydrologic
563 conditions, and civil engineering. Simply installing a fish passage structure does not constitute
564 providing satisfactory fish passage. A successful design requires that information on each of
565 these components be factored into the design.

566 Instances can also occur where a fish passage facility may not be an adequate solution for
567 correcting a passage impediment due to biological, societal, or economic constraints. In these
568 situations, removal of the impediment or altering project operations may be a suitable surrogate
569 in lieu of constructing fish passage facilities (Clay 1995). In other situations, accomplishing fish
570 passage may not be an objective of NMFS because of factors such as limited habitat or the lack
571 of naturally occurring populations of anadromous salmonids above a site.

572 When determining whether NMFS will use its authority to promote or prescribe solutions
573 to fish passage issues, NMFS will rely on a collaborative approach that considers the views of
574 other fisheries resource agencies, Native American tribes, non-governmental organizations, and
575 citizen groups. The approach strives to also accomplish fish passage objectives developed by
576 other parties to support fisheries restoration and habitat enhancement actions identified in
577 conservation plans.

578 This document addresses aspects of a design that pertain to the safe, timely, and effective
579 passage of fish. It is the responsibility of the design engineer to ensure that other design
580 requirements are met such as the structural integrity of the facility and public safety.

581 This document provides specific fish passage facility design criteria and guidelines for
582 actions within the WCR pertaining to the various authorities of NMFS. NMFS will apply the
583 criteria and guidelines to major upgrades to existing facilities and the design of new fish passage
584 facilities. Existing facilities that are not compliant with this document may have to be modified
585 using the criteria identified herein if fish passage problems are observed at these facilities.

586 NMFS is typically more involved in the design of larger facilities and those based on
587 developing technologies. However, NMFS will endeavor to participate in the design process and
588 construction inspections of all fish passage facilities within the WCR, subject to workload and
589 scope of the facility.

590

1.5 Experimental Technologies

591 Proponents of new, unproven fish passage designs (i.e., designs not meeting the criteria
592 and guidelines contained in this document) must provide NMFS with the following:

- 593 · A biological basis for the concept
594 · A demonstrated, favorable fish behavioral response in a laboratory setting
595 · An acceptable plan for evaluating the prototype installation

596 · An acceptable alternate fish passage design developed concurrently with the unproven fish
597 passage design that satisfies the criteria listed herein, should the prototype not perform as
598 anticipated nor adequately protect fish

599 The experimental technologies process is intended for new and innovative technologies
600 that can be broadly applied, rather than for a fish passage design that applies to a single site.
601 Appendix C (Experimental Technologies) provides additional information on the NMFS
602 approval process for unproven fish passage technologies.

603 **1.6 Waivers**

604 The criteria listed herein are specific standards for fish passage facility design,
605 maintenance, and operation. They cannot be changed for use in a project design without a
606 written waiver from NMFS, which will be considered on a project-by-project basis. The waiver
607 may be for a single criterion or for several criteria if required by site constraints or extenuating
608 circumstances. For any waiver, NMFS will require that a site-specific biological rationale be
609 presented. It is the responsibility of the applicant to provide evidence in support of any proposed
610 waiver and for the evidence to be submitted for approval early in the design process and well in
611 advance of a proposed action. Conversely, site-specific criteria may be added to a project's
612 design where there is an opportunity or need to provide additional protection for fish through
613 more conservative designs. NMFS may also provide written approval for use of alternative
614 passage standards in certain situations if NMFS determines that the alternative standards provide
615 equal or superior protection compared to the criteria listed herein.

616 **1.7 Consultation under the Endangered Species Act**

617 In consultation with NMFS, a project developer may choose to use this document as the
618 basis for a fish passage design and also include components of the project that are beyond the
619 scope of this document. For example, this could include construction management,
620 implementation scheduling, riparian replacement, and monitoring. It is also possible that part or
621 all of this document, or alternative passage standards that are approved by NMFS, could be used
622 to develop a programmatic consultation under the ESA. A programmatic consultation with
623 NMFS under the ESA may conclude that implementing multiple fish passage projects will not
624 pose any threat to ESA-listed species or to critical habitat of ESA-listed species. In this
625 situation, consulting with NMFS under the ESA on an individual-project basis could be avoided.

626 **1.8 Additional Information**

627 Additional information on fish passage is available at the WCR website:
628 <http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/>. Questions regarding this document and requests for
629 assistance from NMFS fish passage specialists can be directed to the following offices:

Environmental Services Branch

Environmental Services Branch

NOAA Fisheries West Coast Region

NOAA Fisheries West Coast Region

1201 NE Lloyd Boulevard, Suite 1100

777 Sonoma Avenue, Room 325

Portland, Oregon 97232-1274

503-230-5400

Santa Rosa, California 95404-6528

707-387-0737

630

631

2 Definition of Terms

632 **Anadromous** – pertaining to a fish species that displays the life history pattern known as
633 anadromy in which adults spawn in freshwater and juveniles migrate to sea to grow to their final
634 size and then return to freshwater to spawn (Quinn 2005).

635 **Active screens** – juvenile fish screens equipped with efficient mechanical cleaning
636 capability that are automatically cleaned as frequently as necessary to keep the screens free of
637 any debris that may restrict flow through the screen area. NMFS requires active screen designs
638 in most cases.

639 **Applicant** – a person or entity that proposes to design, modify, or construct a fish passage
640 facility at an existing or new barrier, water diversion, or water conveyance that NMFS will
641 review under its authorities identified in Chapter 1.

642 **Approach velocity** – the vector component of canal velocity that is normal
643 (perpendicular) to, and immediately upstream of, the screen surface. Approach velocity is
644 calculated based upon the submerged area of the screen for conical screens, all cylindrical
645 screens (torpedo, T-screen, and end-of-pipe or hose screens) where submergence and clearance
646 criteria are met, and inclined screens where angle and submergence requirements are met. For
647 rotary drum screens, approach velocity is the vector component of canal flow velocity that is
648 normal to, and immediately upstream of, the vertical projection of the screen surface.

649 Approach velocity is a design parameter that is used to calculate the minimum amount of
650 effective screen area required to protect fish. The amount of effective screen area required to
651 meet screen performance criteria is calculated by dividing the maximum diversion flow by the
652 approach velocity. Approach velocity can be measured in the field with precise flow
653 measurement equipment, and average operating approach velocity can be calculated by dividing
654 the measured screen flow by the effective screen area. Approach velocity should be measured as
655 close to the boundary layer of turbulence generated by the screen face as is physically possible.
656 Chapter 10 provides a more detailed discussion of approach velocity.

657 **Apron** – a flat or slightly inclined slab of concrete below a flow control structure that
658 provides erosion protection and produces hydraulic characteristics suitable for energy dissipation
659 or, in some cases, fish exclusion.

660 **Attraction flow** – flow that emanates from a fishway entrance with sufficient velocity and
661 quantity, and in the proper location and direction, to attract upstream migrants into the fishway
662 entrance. Attraction flow consists of gravity flow from the fish ladder and any auxiliary water
663 system (AWS) flow added at points within the lower fish ladder.

664 **Auxiliary water system or auxiliary water supply system (AWS)** – a hydraulic system
665 that augments fish ladder flow at various points in a passage facility for upstream migrating fish.
666 Large amounts of auxiliary water flow are typically added near the fishway entrance pool to
667 increase the amount of attraction flow emanating from the fishway entrance and the
668 attractiveness of the entrance to fish.

669 **Backwash** – a system that removes debris from dewatering screens by using pressurized
670 flow against the screen surface in the opposite direction of the approach flow.

671 **Backwater** – a condition whereby a hydraulic drop is influenced or controlled by a water
672 surface control feature located downstream of the hydraulic drop.

673 **Baffles** – physical structures placed in the water flow path designed to dissipate energy or
674 redirect flow to achieve more uniform flow conditions.

675 **Bankfull** – the bank height when a stream or river channel is inundated under a flow that
676 occurs at the 1.2-year to 1.5-year average flood recurrence interval. Bankfull height may be
677 estimated by morphological features in the channel such as: 1) a topographic break from a
678 vertical bank to a flat floodplain or from a steep to a gentle slope; 2) a change in vegetation from
679 bare ground to grass, moss to grass, grass to sage, grass to trees, or no trees to trees; 3) a textural
680 change of depositional sediment; 4) the elevation below which no fine debris (e.g., needles,
681 leaves, cones, seeds) occurs; and 5) a textural change of fine sediment deposits (matrix material)
682 between cobbles or rocks.

683 **Bedload** – sand, silt, gravel, soil, and rock debris transported by moving water on or near
684 the streambed.

685 **Bifurcation (trifurcation) pools** – pools in a fish ladder below which the fish ladder (and
686 flow) is divided into two or three separate routes.

687 **Brail** – a device that is moved upward (vertically) through a water column to crowd fish
688 into an area for collection.

689 **Bypass flow** – in the context of dewatering screen design, the portion of diverted flow
690 that is specifically used to bypass (i.e., return) fish to the river.

691 **Bypass reach** – the portion of the river between the point of flow diversion and where
692 bypassed flow and fish are returned to the river.

693 **Bypass entrance** – an unscreened opening in a dewatering facility that fish can enter, and
694 after which are conveyed in flow to a sampling facility or back to the stream or river. The
695 number and locations of entrances at a facility can range from one to several and are discussed in
696 Chapter 10.

697 **Bypass system** – the component of a downstream fish passage facility that conveys
698 (transports) fish from the diverted flow back into the body of water from which they originated.
699 Bypass systems typically consist of entrance, conveyance (flume or pipe), and outfall structures.

700 **Canal velocity** – the water particle speed (feet per second) in a canal flowing parallel to
701 the streambank.

702 **Channel bed width** – the width of the streambed under bankfull channel conditions.

703 **Conceptual design** – an initial design concept based on the site conditions and biological
704 needs of the species intended for passage, also sometimes referred to as preliminary design or
705 functional design. This is the first phase in the design process of a fish passage facility and is
706 discussed in Chapter 3.

707 **Crowder** – a combination of static or mobile panels installed in a fishway, raceway, or
708 holding pool for the purpose of moving fish into a specific area for sampling, counting,
709 broodstock collection, or other purposes. Crowder panels are usually porous and constructed of
710 perforated plate or picket bars. The panels can also be fabricated using solid, non-porous
711 materials. Also, see the definition for picket leads in this chapter.

712 **Diffuser** – a system of hydraulic components arranged to control water flow rate and
713 convert high-velocity, high-pressure, non-uniform flow into low-energy, uniform flow. A
714 diffuser also includes one or more panels of narrowly spaced horizontal or vertical bars to
715 prevent fish from passing through the bars and entering the area upstream of the panels.

716 **Effective screen area** – the total wetted screen area minus the area occluded by major
717 structural elements.

718 **Entrainment** – the diversion of fish into an unsafe passage route.

719 **Exclusion barriers** – facilities that prevent upstream migrants from continuing to migrate
720 upstream. These are typically used to prevent fish from entering areas that have no route for fish
721 to egress the area or may result in fish being injured if they entered the area.

722 **Exit control section** – the upper portion of an upstream passage facility that provides
723 suitable passage conditions to accommodate varying forebay water surfaces. Water surface
724 fluctuation is accommodated by adjusting the pool geometry and weir design, and by the
725 capability to add or remove flow at specific locations.

726 **False weir** – a specialized floor diffuser used to introduce water at the top of a fishway or
727 entrance to a distribution flume for the purpose of attracting and encouraging fish to move into a
728 specific area. The device usually creates a strong upwelling flow that cascades over a weir. Fish
729 are attracted to the cascading flow and swim through the upwelling into a distribution flume.

730 **Fish ladder** – the structural component of an upstream fish passage facility that allows
731 fish to move over a barrier by dissipating the potential energy caused by the head differential that
732 results from a barrier being placed in a waterway. The ladder dissipates energy using a series of
733 discrete pools, a series of baffled chutes and resting pools, or uniformly with a single baffled
734 chute placed between an entrance pool and an exit pool.

735 **Fish lock** – a mechanical and hydraulic component of an upstream passage facility that
736 raises fish over a dam by attracting or crowding fish into a chamber, closing access to the

737 chamber, and filling the chamber until the water surface in the lock chamber reaches (or comes
738 sufficiently close to) the reservoir forebay level. Once at this water surface elevation, a gate to
739 the chamber is opened, allowing fish to swim into the reservoir above the dam (Clay 1995).

740 ***Fish passage season*** – the range of dates that characterize when juvenile or adult life
741 stages of a species will arrive at a specific location during their downstream or upstream
742 migration. The locations could include, for example, a dam or an existing or proposed fishway.

743 ***Fish weir*** (also called picket weir, picket lead, or fish fence) – a device with closely
744 spaced pickets or bars that allows water flow to pass through the weir, pickets, or fence, but
745 precludes fish from migrating farther upstream. This term is normally applied to the device used
746 to guide adult fish into a trap or counting window. This device is not a weir in the hydraulic
747 sense.

748 ***Fishway*** – the suite of facilities, structures, devices, measures, and project operations that
749 constitute and are essential to the success of an upstream or downstream fish passage system.
750 The suite provides a water passage route around or through an obstruction that is designed to
751 dissipate the energy in such a manner that enables fish to ascend the obstruction without undue
752 stress (Clay 1995).

753 ***Fishway entrance*** – the component of an upstream passage facility that discharges
754 attraction flow into the tailrace of a barrier and that upstream migrating fish use to enter the
755 facility.

756 ***Fishway entrance pool*** – the pool immediately upstream of the fishway entrance(s)
757 where fish ladder flow combines with AWS flow to form the attraction flow.

758 ***Fishway exit*** – the component of an upstream fish passage facility where flow from the
759 forebay of the dam or barrier enters the fishway, and where fish exit the ladder and enter the
760 forebay upstream of the dam.

761 ***Fishway weir*** – the partition that divides two pools in a fishway and passes flow between
762 adjacent pools.

763 ***Flood frequency*** – the probable frequency that a streamflow will recur based on historic
764 flow records. For example, a 100-year flood event refers to a flood flow magnitude that is likely
765 to occur on average once every 100 years or has a 1% chance of being exceeded in any given
766 year. Although calculating possible flood recurrence is often based on historical records, there is
767 no guarantee that a 100-year flood will occur within the 100-year period, or not occur several
768 times within that period.

769 ***Floodplain*** – the area adjacent to a stream that is inundated during periods of flow that
770 exceed the channel capacity the stream has established over time.

771 ***Flow control structure*** – a structure in a water conveyance designed to maintain flow in
772 a predictable fashion.

773 **Flow duration exceedance curve** – the plot of the relationship between the magnitude of
774 daily flow and the percentage of time during a specific period that flow is likely to be equaled or
775 exceeded. Flow exceedance curves may use flow data from an entire year or part of a year. For
776 example, the 1% annual exceedance flow is the flow level exceeded 1% of the time within the
777 entire year (i.e., 3.6 days on average), whereas the 1% exceedance flow for the fish migration
778 window is the flow level exceeded 1% of the time during the fish passage season for a particular
779 species and location. Exceedance values are usually derived using daily average flow data.

780 **Forebay** – the waterbody located immediately upstream of a dam that results from the
781 dam impounding river flow behind the structure.

782 **Freeboard** – the height of a structure that extends above the maximum water surface
783 elevation.

784 **Fry** – a juvenile salmonid with an absorbed egg sac that is less than 60 millimeters in
785 total length (as defined for the purposes of this document). An embryo develops within an egg
786 until it hatches. The hatchling (alevins) feeds off the large external yoke sac for nourishment,
787 grows, and emerges from the spawning gravel as a fry when it can feed on its own (Quinn 2005).

788 **Functional design** – an initial design concept based on the site conditions and biological
789 needs of the species intended for passage. This is also sometimes referred to as preliminary
790 design or conceptual design. Also, see the definition for conceptual design in this chapter. The
791 functional design commonly includes the general layout, interior dimensions, and specifications
792 covering the hydraulic features of the fishway (Clay 1995).

793 **Hatchery supplementation** – hatchery programs designed for hatchery-origin fish to
794 spawn in the wild and make a contribution to population or species conservation (HSRG 2009).

795 **Head loss** – the irreversible reduction in total head (total energy per unit weight) of water
796 as it flows through conduits, open channels, spillways, turbines, and other hydraulic structures.
797 Total head is the sum of elevation head, pressure head, and velocity head. Head is described in
798 units of length, usually in feet or meters.

799 **Hopper** – a device used to lift fish in water from a collection or holding area for release
800 upstream of a barrier or into a transportation truck.

801 **Hydraulic drop** – the difference in total head between an upstream water surface and a
802 downstream water surface. It includes the sums of the elevation head, pressure head, and
803 velocity head at the upstream and downstream water surface locations. Also, see the definition
804 for head loss in this chapter.

805 For fishway entrances and fishway weirs, the differences in velocity head and pressure
806 head are usually negligible, and only water surface elevation differences are considered when
807 estimating hydraulic drop across the structure.

808 **Impingement** – the condition where a fish comes in contact with the surface of a
809 dewatering screen and remains on the screen. This occurs when the approach flow velocity
810 immediately upstream of the screen exceeds the swimming capability of a fish given its size and

811 condition. Impingement can injure a fish, and prolonged contact with a screen surface or bar
812 rack can result in mortality. One objective of NMFS' approach velocity criterion is to eliminate
813 the possibility for healthy salmonid fry or larger fish to become impinged on a screen surface or
814 bar rack.

815 ***Infiltration gallery*** – a facility used to withdraw surface water from beneath the
816 streambed.

817 ***Intermediate bypass entrance*** – a bypass entrance installed upstream of the main bypass
818 entrance. Also, see the definition of bypass entrance in this chapter. Chapter 10 provides
819 guidelines on the number of bypass entrances needed in a bypass facility and their location.

820 ***Kelts*** – an adult steelhead that survived spawning and is migrating downstream
821 (Quinn 2005).

822 ***Off-ladder trap*** – a facility or system for capturing fish located adjacent to a fish ladder
823 in a flow route that is separate from the normal fish ladder route. This system allows fish to pass
824 a barrier via the ladder or be routed into the trap, depending on the management objectives for
825 the species or population at the facility.

826 ***Minimum effective screen area*** – the maximum screen flow divided by the allowable
827 approach velocity.

828 ***Passive screens*** – juvenile fish screens that do not have an automated mechanical
829 cleaning system.

830 ***Picket leads or pickets*** – a set of narrowly spaced vertical or inclined flat bars or slender
831 circular cylinders designed to exclude fish from a specific route of passage. Pickets are also used
832 in crowders. Picket leads are similar to diffusers, but picket leads generally lack the ability to
833 control the flow rate or significantly alter the flow distribution. Also, see the definitions of a fish
834 weir and crowder in this chapter.

835 ***PIT-tag detector*** – a device used to scan fish for the presence of a passive integrated
836 transponder (PIT) tag implanted in the fish. While passing through the detector, PIT tags
837 transmit a unique identifying number that can be read at a short distance, depending on the tag
838 size, type, and antenna design. These passive tags operate in the radio frequency range and are
839 inductively charged and read by the detector. They do not have a battery and can remain
840 operational for decades.

841 ***Plunging flow*** – flow over a weir that falls into a receiving pool where the water surface
842 elevation of the receiving pool is lower than that of the weir crest elevation. Surface flow in the
843 receiving pool is typically in the upstream direction, downstream from the point of entry into the
844 receiving pool. Also, see the definition for streaming flow in this chapter.

845 ***Porosity*** – the percent open area of a mesh, screen, rack, or other flow area relative to the
846 entire gross area.

847 **Positive exclusion** – a means of excluding fish by providing a barrier the fish cannot
848 physically pass through.

849 **Preliminary design** – an initial design concept based on the site conditions and biological
850 needs of the species intended for passage. This is also sometimes referred to as a functional
851 design or conceptual design. Also, see the definition for conceptual design in this chapter.

852 **Ramping rates** – the rate at which the water surface level at a specific point in a river is
853 artificially altered (either increased or decreased) over a specific time period as a result of
854 changes in the regulation of flow upstream. The rate is typically measured and stated as the
855 change in vertical inches per hour.

856 **Rating curve** – graphed data depicting the relationship between water surface elevation
857 and streamflow.

858 **Redd** – the nest a female salmonid excavates, deposits embryos into, and immediately
859 buries with gravel substrate. Redds can be located in streams, rivers, or lake beaches. The
860 locations selected vary with populations and species (Quinn 2005).

861 **Rotary drum fish screen** – a horizontally oriented cylinder (drum) constructed of fish
862 screen material. Rotary drum screens include an active cleaning method and at least one fish
863 bypass route. The drum rotates on its horizontal axis during each cleaning cycle. Debris
864 deposited on the upstream surface of the drum is lifted by the rotating drum and washed off the
865 downstream surface of the drum by the flow passing through the drum. Fish are guided to a
866 bypass entrance upstream of one end of the screen array.

867 **Screen material** – the material that provides physical exclusion to reduce the probability
868 of entraining fish into diverted flow. Examples of screen material include perforated plate, bar
869 screen, and woven wire mesh.

870 **Scour** – erosion of streambed material resulting in the temporary or permanent lowering
871 of the streambed profile.

872 **Smolt** – a juvenile salmonid that has completed its freshwater rearing cycle and initiated a
873 downstream migration to reach a marine environment. To prepare for seawater, the freshwater
874 life stage (parr) undergoes a physiological and osmoregulatory transition and begins its
875 downstream migration. Fish in this transitional stage between freshwater and marine rearing that
876 are actively migrating downstream are termed smolts (Quinn 2005).

877 **Streaming flow** – flow over a weir that falls into a receiving pool and where the water
878 surface elevation is above the weir crest elevation. In these situations, surface flow in the
879 receiving pool is typically in the downstream direction and away from the point where flow
880 enters the receiving pool.

881 **Sweeping velocity** – the vector component of water particle speed that is measured
882 parallel to, and immediately upstream of, the screen surface.

883 **Tailrace** – the portion of the water channel below a dam that conveys turbine and
884 spillway discharge downstream from the dam.

885 **Tailwater** – the body of water immediately downstream of a dam or other in-stream
886 structure.

887 **Total project head** – the difference in water surface elevation from upstream to
888 downstream (or from the headwater to the tailwater) of a barrier such as a dam or weir.
889 Normally, total project head encompasses a range of values based on streamflow and the
890 operation of flow control devices.

891 **Thalweg** – the streamflow path following the deepest parts (i.e., the lowest elevation) of a
892 stream channel.

893 **Tide gate** – a mechanical device that allows flow to pass in one direction but not in the
894 opposite direction. Tide gates are often used as part of a levee or dike system to allow
895 streamflow into a bay or estuary during ebb tides and prevent the flow of saltwater to pass in the
896 opposite direction and enter the area upstream of the levee or dike during flood tides.

897 **Training wall** – a physical structure designed to direct flow to a specific location or in a
898 specific direction.

899 **Transport channel** – a hydraulic conveyance designed to allow fish to swim between
900 different sections of a fish passage facility.

901 **Transport velocity** – the velocity of the flow within a transport channel of a fishway.

902 **Trap and haul** – the collection, loading, and transportation of adult fish from a collection
903 site at or below a barrier to a release point located upstream from the barrier or at another
904 location, and juvenile fish from a collection site at or above a barrier to a release point located
905 downstream from the barrier or at another location.

906 **Trash rack** – a rack of vertical bars with spacing designed to catch debris and preclude it
907 from entering the fishway or other hydraulic structure but allows fish to pass through the
908 openings between bars. Trash racks are also referred to as a grizzly.

909 **Trash rack, coarse** – a rack of widely spaced vertical bars designed to catch large debris
910 and preclude it from entering a fishway, while providing sufficient openings between the bars to
911 allow adult fish to exit the fishway.

912 **Trash rack, fine** – a rack of narrowly spaced vertical bars designed to catch both small
913 and large debris and reduce or eliminate the entry of fish into the intake of an AWS.

914 **Turbine intake screens** – partial flow screens positioned within the upper portion of a
915 turbine intake that guide fish entering the turbine into a collection system for transport or bypass
916 back to the river. Turbine intake screens are installed at most mainstem Columbia and Snake
917 river dams operated by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE; Appendix G).

918 **Upstream fish passage** – fish passage relating to the upstream migration of adult and
919 juvenile fish.

920 **Upstream passage facility** – a fishway system designed to pass fish upstream of a
921 passage impediment, either by volitional passage (i.e., under their own swimming capability) or
922 non-volitional passage (i.e., via a lift or transport vehicle).

923 **Vee screens** – a pair of vertically oriented juvenile fish screens installed in a vee
924 configuration (i.e., positioned symmetrically about a centerline), and where the bypass entrance
925 is located at the apex of the two screens. Vee screens are also referred to as chevron screens.

926 **Velocity head, h_v** – the kinetic energy per unit weight of fluid due to its velocity; h_v has
927 the units of length (usually in feet or meters) and is calculated as shown in the following
928 equation:

929
$$h_v = v^2/2g$$

930 where:

931 v = velocity of the fluid (feet, meters)

932 g = acceleration due to gravity (feet per second, meters per second)

933 **Vertical barrier screens** – screens located between the bulkhead (upstream) and
934 operating (downstream) gate slots at mainstem dams on the Columbia and Snake rivers operated
935 by the USACE. The screens keep fish diverted into the bulkhead slot by turbine intake screens
936 from passing back into the turbine through the operating slot. Fish retained in the bulkhead gate
937 slot by the vertical barrier screen enter a specially designed juvenile fish bypass system through
938 orifices. (Figure G-4 in Appendix G.)

939 **Volitional passage** – fish passage whereby fish transit a passage facility under their own
940 swimming capability, using timing and behavior they choose, and under all naturally passable
941 flows. Volitional passage means fish can enter, traverse, and exit a passage facility under their
942 own power, instinct, and swimming capability. The fish pass through the facility without the aid
943 of any apparatus, structure, or device (i.e., they are not trapped, mechanically lifted or pumped,
944 or transported).

945 **Wasteway** – a conveyance that returns excess water originally diverted from an upstream
946 location back to the stream or channel from which it was diverted.

947 **Weir** – a low wall or dam built across the width of a river that pools water behind it while
948 allowing water to flow steadily over the top of the structure.

949

3 Design Development

950

3.1 Introduction

951 Chapter 3 describes the general process NMFS follows and the types of information
952 required during project design. Fish passage project designs subject to NMFS engineering
953 review are typically developed in two major phases. The major phases are the preliminary
954 design (Section 3.2.1), also referred to as the functional or conceptual design, and the final
955 design (Section 3.2.2), which results in the development of detailed plans and specifications.

956 NMFS will review all fish passage facility designs in the context of whether they meet
957 the criteria and guidelines listed in this document. During its review, NMFS will consider site-
958 specific information, including site limitations, biological information, and operations and
959 maintenance (O&M) information. Although the submittal of all information discussed in
960 Chapter 3 may not be required in writing, the applicant should be prepared to describe how the
961 biological and site information was included in the development of the project design.

962

3.2 Design Process

963 *Both the preliminary and final designs must be developed in cooperation and interaction*
964 *with engineering staff from NMFS WCR Environmental Services Division.*

965 To facilitate an iterative, interactive, and cooperative process, project applicants are
966 encouraged to initiate coordination with NMFS early in the development of the preliminary
967 design. Early and frequent interactions can aid in a smooth review process and prevent project
968 designs from proceeding toward a problematic design that cannot be issued permits under the
969 ESA. In general, NMFS cannot conduct a project review of design plans that are submitted
970 without the supporting information (listed in Section 3.3).

971 Project applicants should consult with NMFS on all phases of a design. Section 3.2.2
972 provides the minimum information required for NMFS review. Large, complex projects will
973 likely have multiple iterations within each of the two major design phases. As multiple design
974 iterations are developed, each iteration should be made available to NMFS for review.

975

3.2.1 Preliminary Design

976 *Depending on the size and complexity of the project, NMFS may require that it be*
977 *allowed to review and provide comments on the 30%, 60%, and 90% design iterations of the*
978 *preliminary design. Due to the nature of the review and permitting processes in cases such as*
979 *applications for a FERC license and ESA consultation (e.g., an ESA Section 9 enforcement*
980 *activity or ESA permit), a preliminary design is required and must be developed in cooperation*
981 *and interaction with engineering staff from NMFS WCR Environmental Services Division. The*

982 *preliminary design must be complete and detailed enough to allow the application or*
983 *consultation to move forward.*

984 The preliminary design establishes a preferred facility design alternative based on
985 comprehensive evaluations of the key elements of the design. This first phase in the design of a
986 fish passage facility includes the following steps:

- 987 1. Engage with project stakeholders and ascertain their operational requirements.
- 988 2. Identify and prioritize project objectives and the associated functional requirements.
- 989 3. Assemble the design criteria of the federal, state, and tribal fish resource agencies.
- 990 4. Collect pertinent biological, hydrological, and engineering information.
- 991 5. Define project reliability and backup or contingency parameters.
- 992 6. Develop a process for evaluating and ranking alternative designs and operations.
- 993 7. Generate alternative designs and select the preferred alternative.
- 994 8. Develop initial layout drawings and models as needed to describe the facility.
- 995 9. Describe the operational requirements of the major facility sub-components.

996 The preliminary design results in a facilities layout that includes section drawings and the
997 identification of component sizes and water flow rates for the primary project features. Cost
998 estimates are also included in the preliminary design. Completion of the preliminary design
999 commonly results in a document that may be used for budgetary and planning purposes and for
1000 soliciting (and subsequently collating) design review comments provided by other reviewing
1001 entities. The preliminary design is usually considered to be at the 20% to 30% completion stage
1002 of the design process. The preliminary design may include the following sub-phases of design
1003 work:

- 1004 · Reconnaissance study: Typically, this study investigates the optimal design and construction
1005 specific to each site. The study usually occurs early in the preliminary design process.
- 1006 · Conceptual alternatives study: This study lists the types of facilities that may be appropriate
1007 for accomplishing the fish passage objectives at a selected site. It does not entail much
1008 on-site investigation. Its purpose is to develop a narrowed list of alternatives that merit
1009 additional assessment.
- 1010 · Feasibility study: This study includes an incrementally greater amount of development of
1011 each design concept (including a preliminary cost estimate) than does the conceptual
1012 alternatives study. It enables the most-preferred alternative to be identified.

1013 **3.2.2 Detailed or Final Design**

1014 *The final design must be based on the preliminary design that NMFS reviewed. Any*
1015 *significant deviation from the approved preliminary design will require approval by NMFS.*
1016 *Once the detailed design process commences, NMFS must have the opportunity to review and*
1017 *provide comments on the designs developed at the 30%, 60%, 90%, and 100% stages, or near*
1018 *each of these stages.*

1019 *The detailed or final design phase uses the preliminary design as a springboard for*
1020 *beginning the final design and specifications in preparation for the bid solicitation (or*
1021 *negotiation) process. NMFS review requirements usually provide refinements in the detailed*
1022 *design that will lead to O&M and fish safety benefits. Electronic drawings are the preferred*

1023 *review medium, though NMFS may request 11-by-17-inch paper drawings in addition to*
1024 *electronic media.*

1025 **3.2.3 Smaller Projects**

1026 *For smaller projects where the review process may involve only one or two steps, each*
1027 *submittal to NMFS must include enough information about the project to ensure that the*
1028 *reviewing engineer is able to discern the goals of the project, any biological and physical*
1029 *constraints of the project, and how the proposed design intends to meet the goals of the project*
1030 *given constraints that were identified.*

1031 **3.2.4 Review Timelines**

1032 *NMFS must be allowed at least 30 days to review and comment on each stage of the*
1033 *design process (30%, 60%, 90%, and 100%).*

1034 *Although NMFS may waive or voluntarily shorten a review period for a specific stage,*
1035 *project applicants should develop their design schedules using the standard 30-day review period*
1036 *for each stage of the design.*

1037 **3.3 Information Requirements**

1038 *The design of all fish passage facilities should be developed based on a synthesis of the*
1039 *required site and biological information listed below, with a clear understanding of how the*
1040 *facility will be operated and maintained. The following project information is needed for, and*
1041 *should be provided with, the preliminary design. In some cases, NMFS may require the*
1042 *submittal of additional information not listed herein.*

1043 **3.3.1 Functional Requirements**

1044 *The project design should describe the functional requirements of the proposed fish*
1045 *passage facilities as related to all anticipated project operations and streamflows. The design*
1046 *should describe the expected median, maximum, and minimum monthly diverted flow rates and*
1047 *any special operations (e.g., the use of flash boards) that modify forebay or tailrace water surface*
1048 *elevations.*

1049 **3.3.2 Site and Physical Information**

1050 *The following physical information should be provided and used in developing the*
1051 *project design.*

1052 **3.3.2.1 Plans**

1053 *Design submittals should include visual representations of various project features.*
1054 *These plans may include any or all of the following:*

- 1055 *• Site plan drawings: Showing the location and layout of the proposed fish passage facility*
1056 *relative to existing project facility features*

- 1057 · Surveys: Topographic and bathymetric surveys, particularly where they might influence
1058 locating fishway entrances and exits and personnel access to the site
1059 · Additional drawings: Drawings of existing facilities illustrating longitudinal profile,
1060 elevations, and plan views, including details showing the intake configuration, location, and
1061 capacity of the project’s hydraulic features

1062 **3.3.2.2 Hydrology**

1063 Design submittals should include information on the hydrology of the basin—including
1064 daily and monthly streamflow data and flow duration exceedance curves at the proposed site for
1065 a fish passage facility—based on the entire period of available records. If streamgage data are
1066 unavailable for a proposed facility location (or if records exist for only a brief period of time),
1067 flow records may be generated using synthetic methods to develop the necessary basin
1068 hydrology information, which is used to develop the high and low fish passage design flows for
1069 the project (Chapter 4).

1070 **3.3.2.3 Project operations**

1071 Information on project operations that may affect fish migration must be provided. This
1072 could include information on powerhouse flow capacity, periods of powerhouse operation, and
1073 project forebay and tailwater rating curves that encompass the entire operational range of the
1074 project.

1075 **3.3.2.4 Morphology**

1076 Information on the stream or river channel at the site of the fish passage project must be
1077 provided, including the following:

- 1078 · Determine the potential for channel degradation or channel migration, which may alter
1079 stream channel geometry and compromise fishway performance if the fish passage facility is
1080 proposed at a new or modified diversion.
- 1081 · Describe whether the stream channel is stable, conditionally stable, or unstable.
- 1082 · Identify the overall geomorphology of the channel (e.g., straight, meandering, or braided).
- 1083 · Provide the rate of lateral channel migration and change in stream gradient that has occurred
1084 during the last decade.
- 1085 · Describe the effect the proposed fish passage facility may have on the existing stream
1086 alignment and gradient.
- 1087 · Describe the potential for future channel modification to occur; this could be from
1088 construction of the facility or natural channel processes (i.e., instability).

1089 **3.3.2.5 Sediment and debris**

1090 Any sediment and debris conditions that may influence the design of the fish passage
1091 facility or present potentially significant problems must be described.

1092 **3.3.3 Miscellaneous Information**

1093 Section 3.3.3 outlines miscellaneous information that should be provided and used in
1094 developing the project design.

1095 **3.3.3.1 Salmonid biological information**

1096 The following biological information should be provided:

- 1097 · Salmonid species present in the basin that are affected by the project, or are expected to be in
1098 the basin in the future
- 1099 · Approximate abundance of each salmonid species and run (e.g., winter, spring, summer, fall,
1100 and late fall)
- 1101 · Various life stages present, or expected to be present, in the future and their migration timing
1102 (fish passage season)
- 1103 · Location and timing of spawning in the basin

1104 **3.3.3.2 Non-salmonid passage**

1105 Information on any non-salmonid species (and life stages) present at the proposed fish
1106 passage site should be provided to address passage requirements for these species.

1107 **3.3.3.3 Predation risk**

1108 Information on predatory species that may be present at the proposed site should be
1109 provided along with information on conditions that favor or help to prevent their preying on
1110 salmonids.

1111 **3.3.3.4 Fish behavior characteristics**

1112 Any known fish behavioral traits of salmonid passage that might affect the design of the
1113 facility should be provided.¹

1114 **3.3.3.5 Additional research needs**

1115 Any uncertainty associated with how migrating fish approach the site where a new
1116 facility is being considered needs to be identified through directed studies, including routes fish
1117 may use when approaching the site.

1118 **3.3.3.6 Streamflow requirements**

1119 The minimum streamflow required to allow migration around the impediment during low
1120 water periods (based on past site experience) should be documented or estimated.

¹ For example, most salmonid species pass readily over a fishway weir with either plunging or streaming flow. However, pink and chum salmon have a strong preference for streaming flow conditions and may reject plunging flow. Therefore, if pink or chum salmon are in the basin, this needs to be identified. Similarly, American shad prefer streaming flow conditions and generally reject both plunging flow and orifice passage.

1121 **3.3.3.7 Poaching risk**

1122 The degree of poaching or illegal trespass activity in the immediate area of the proposed
1123 facility needs to be identified, along with any security measures needed to reduce or eliminate
1124 illegal activity.

1125 **3.3.3.8 Water quality**

1126 Water quality factors that may affect fish passage at the site need to be described. For
1127 example, fish may not migrate if water temperature and quality are marginal and may instead
1128 seek coldwater refugia (e.g., deep pools fed by groundwater) or holding zones where dissolved
1129 oxygen levels are higher than surrounding reaches until water quality conditions improve.

1130 **3.3.4 Operations and Maintenance Information**

1131 *In order to provide a degree of certainty that necessary maintenance will be funded and*
1132 *performed, the following O&M information should be provided for the development of the*
1133 *preliminary design.*

1134 Historically, many fish passage facilities have been built and have subsequently fallen
1135 into disrepair due to improper operations or lack of maintenance or funding. New project
1136 designs must consider the need for proper operations and long-term maintenance.

1137 **3.3.4.1 Maintenance funding**

1138 *The O&M plan should identify the party responsible for funding the O&M of the*
1139 *proposed facility.*

1140 **3.3.4.2 Operating and maintaining entity**

1141 *The O&M plan should identify the party responsible for operating the facility and*
1142 *carrying out maintenance actions.*

1143 **3.3.4.3 Facility shutdown**

1144 *The O&M plan should describe maintenance actions that will require the facility to be*
1145 *taken out of service and the timeline for these actions.*

1146 **3.3.4.4 Schedule of operations**

1147 The O&M plan should identify the proposed schedule of operations for intermittently
1148 operated facilities, such as weirs or traps, and the accompanying plans for salvaging fish from
1149 these facilities after they are operational. This should include plans for how the facility will be
1150 dewatered and how salvaged fish will be returned to the stream or river.

4 Design Flow Range

The guidance in Chapter 4 applies to projects located in Washington, Oregon, and Idaho over the range of anadromous salmonid habitat. Due to significantly different hydrologic conditions and species-specific management considerations, projects in California should refer to: *Hydrologic Considerations for Design of Anadromous Fish Passage Facilities in California*.

4.1 Introduction

A fishway design and facility must allow for the safe, timely, and efficient passage of fish within a specific range of streamflow. The design streamflow range is bracketed by the designated fish passage design low flow and high flow described in Sections 4.2 and 4.3. Within the design streamflow range, a fish passage facility must operate within its specific design criteria. Outside of the design streamflow range, fish must either not be present, not be actively migrating, or must be able to pass safely without need of a fish passage facility.

Site-specific information is critical to determining the design time period and river flows for the passage facility—local hydrology may require that the design streamflow range be modified for a particular site.

4.2 Design Low Flow for Fish Passage

Design low flow for fishways is the mean daily average streamflow that is exceeded 95% of the time during periods when migrating fish are normally present at the site.

This is determined by summarizing the previous 25 years of mean daily streamflow occurring during the fish passage season, or by an appropriate artificial streamflow duration methodology if streamflow records are not available. Shorter data sets of streamflow records may be useable if they encompass a broad range of flow conditions. The fish passage design low flow is the lowest streamflow for which migrants are expected to be present, migrating, and dependent on the proposed facility for safe passage.

4.3 Design High Flow for Fish Passage

Design high flow for fishways is the mean daily average streamflow that is exceeded 5% of the time during periods when migrating fish are normally present at the site.

This is determined by summarizing the previous 25 years of mean daily streamflow occurring during the fish passage season, or by an appropriate artificial streamflow duration methodology if streamflow records are not available. Shorter data sets of streamflow records may be used if they encompass a broad range of flow conditions. The fish passage design high

1182 flow is the highest streamflow for which migrants are expected to be present, migrating, and
1183 dependent on the proposed facility for safe passage.

1184 **4.4 Fish Passage Design for Flood Flows**

1185 *The general fishway design should have sufficient river freeboard to minimize*
1186 *overtopping by 50-year flood flows.*

1187 Above a 50-year flow event, fishway operations may include shutdown of the facility to
1188 allow the facility to quickly return to proper operation when the river drops to within the range of
1189 fish passage design flows. Other mechanisms to protect fishway operations after floods will be
1190 considered on a case-by-case basis. A fishway must never be inoperable due to high river flows
1191 for a period greater than 7 days during the migration period for any anadromous salmonid
1192 species. In addition, the fish passage facility should be of sufficient structural integrity to
1193 withstand the maximum expected flow. It is beyond the scope of this document to specify
1194 structural criteria for this purpose. If the fish passage facility cannot be maintained, the diversion
1195 structure should not operate, and the impediment should be removed.

5 Upstream Adult Fish Passage Systems

5.1 Introduction

Chapter 5 provides criteria and guidelines for designing upstream adult fish passage facilities as well as selecting appropriate ladder types for specific site conditions. These criteria and guidelines apply to adult upstream fish passage facilities in moderately sized streams. Where applicable, supplementary criteria for facilities located in small streams—where annual average flows are less than 500 cubic feet per second (ft³/s)—will be noted.

Chapter 5 also discusses upstream passage impediments, which are artificial or natural structural features or project operations that cause adult or juvenile fish to be injured, killed, blocked, or delayed in their upstream migration to a greater degree than in an unobstructed river setting. These impediments can present total or partial fish passage blockages. Artificial upstream passage impediments require approved structural and operational measures to mitigate, to the maximum extent practicable, for adverse impacts to upstream fish passage.² These impediments require a fish passage design based on conservative criteria because the natural complexity of streams and rivers that usually provide passage opportunities has been substantially altered. The criteria in this chapter also apply to natural barriers, when passage over the barrier is desired and consistent with watershed, subbasin, or recovery plans.

Examples of passage impediments include the following:

- Permanent or intermittent dams
- Hydraulic drops over artificial instream structures³ in excess of 1.5 feet
- Weirs, aprons, hydraulic jumps, or other hydraulic features that produce depths of less than 10 inches, or flow velocity greater than 12 feet per second (ft/s) for more than 90% of the stream channel cross section
- Conditions that create false attraction, including the following:
 - Project operations or features that lead upstream migrants into impassable routes
 - Discharges that may be detected and entered by fish with no certain means of continuing their migration (e.g., poorly designed spillways, cross-basin water transfers, canal wasteways, or unscreened diversions) or have the potential to result in mortality or injury (e.g., turbine draft tubes, shallow aprons, and flow discharges)
- Insufficient flow, which includes the following:

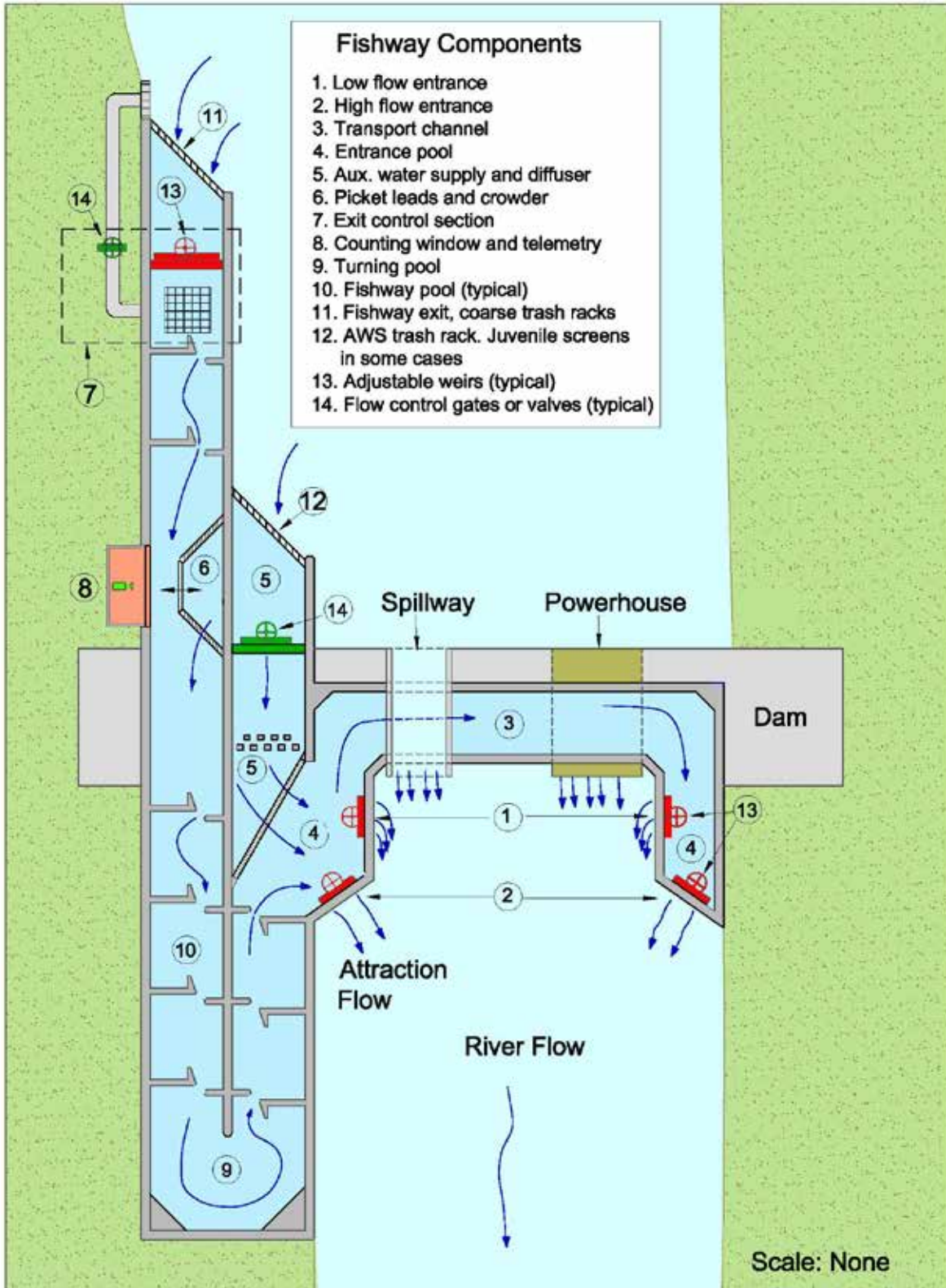
² It is important to note that not every upstream passage facility constructed at a barrier can fully compensate for the full range of passage impairment (Clay 1995). Additional mitigation measures may be required on a case-by-case basis.

³ This is based on the *Fisheries Handbook of Engineering Requirements and Biological Criteria* (Bell 1991), which recommends using fishways for head differences as low as 2 feet.

- 1226 - Diffused or braided flow that impedes approach to the impediment
- 1227 - Insufficient flow in a bypass reach, such that fish cannot enter or are not stimulated to
- 1228 enter the reach and move upstream; bypass reaches are commonly sited adjacent to a
- 1229 powerhouse or wasteway return
- 1230 - Water diversions that reduce instream flow

- 1231 · Poorly designed headcut control or bank stabilization measures that create poor upstream
- 1232 passage conditions such as those listed above
- 1233 · Degraded water quality in a bypass reach, relative to the water quality downstream of the
- 1234 confluence of bypass reach and flow return discharges (e.g., at the confluence of a
- 1235 hydroelectric project tailrace and bypass reach)
- 1236 · Ramping rates in streams or in bypass reaches that delay or strand fish
- 1237 · Upstream passage facilities that do not satisfy the criteria and guidelines described in
- 1238 Chapter 5

1239 The typical components of an upstream adult fish passage system are shown in
1240 Figure 5-1.



1241

1242 Figure 5-1. Components of vertical slot fishway for upstream passage

1243

5.1.1 Volitional Passage

1244 *Volitional passage (as opposed to trap and haul) should be provided at all passage*
1245 *facilities.*

1246 NMFS prefers volitional passage over trap and haul for the following reasons:

- 1247 · Trap and haul passage presents greater risks to salmonids due to handling and transport.
1248 NMFS' strong preference for volitional passage versus trap and haul facilities is primarily
1249 because of these risks.
- 1250 · Another concern regarding trap and haul facilities is funding, maintaining, and operating the
1251 program over the long term, which can affect fish passage efficiency and increase the risk of
1252 facility failure (i.e., because of mechanical failure of individual components).

1253

1254 However, NMFS recognizes that trap and haul passage may be the only viable option in
1255 situations where dam height is a factor, increased water temperature affects passage at long fish
1256 ladders, or fish must pass multiple dams.

1257

5.1.2 Passage of Other Species

1258 *Where appropriate, upstream adult fish passage systems should incorporate passage*
1259 *requirements for other species (e.g., shad, sturgeon, and suckers) that may use the system,*
1260 *provided that the changes do not compromise the passage of target species (salmonids).*

1261 Failure to account for the passage requirements of other species may create a biological
1262 blockage in the ladder that could delay or compromise the passage of the target species. For
1263 example, if American shad (*Alosa sapidissima*) cannot pass a fishway, the numbers of shad in
1264 the fishway may build up to the point where other fish do not enter or move through the fishway.

1265

5.2 Fishway Entrance

1266

5.2.1 Description and Purpose

1267 A fishway entrance is a gate or slot through which fishway attraction flow is discharged
1268 in a manner that encourages and allows adult fish to enter the upstream passage facility. The
1269 fishway entrance is often the most difficult (Bates 1992)—yet most critical—component to
1270 design for an upstream passage system, particularly dams (Clay 1995). Fishway entrances must
1271 be placed to ensure that fish are attracted to and enter the best passage routes past the passage
1272 impediment throughout the entire design flow range. The most important aspects of fishway
1273 entrance design are as follows:

- 1274 · Location of the entrance
- 1275 · Pattern and amount of flow from the entrance
- 1276 · Approach channel immediately downstream of the entrance
- 1277 · Flexibility in adjusting entrance flow to accommodate variations in tailrace elevation, stream
1278 or river flow, and project operations

1279
1280
1281
1282
1283
1284
1285
1286

1287
1288
1289
1290
1291
1292

1293

1294
1295
1296
1297
1298
1299

1300
1301
1302
1303
1304

1305
1306
1307
1308

1309
1310
1311
1312
1313
1314
1315

5.2.2 Specific Criteria and Guidelines – Fishway Entrance

5.2.2.1 Configuration and operation

Unless otherwise approved by NMFS, at sites where the entrances are located in deeper water, fishway entrances must be equipped with downward-opening slide gates or adjustable weir gates that rise and fall with the tailwater elevation. At locations where the tailwater is not deep, orifice entrances or downward-closing slide gates (which create an orifice entrance) may be used. The entrance gate must be able to completely close off the entrance when not in use. Gate stems or other adjustment mechanisms must not be placed in any fish migration pathway.

The fishway entrance gate configuration and its operation may vary based on site-specific project operations and streamflow characteristics. Entrance gates are usually operated in either a fully open or fully closed position, with the operation of the entrance being dependent on tailrace flow characteristics. Sites with limited tailwater fluctuation may not require an entrance gate to regulate the entrance head, while other sites may maintain proper entrance head by regulating auxiliary water flow through a fixed-geometry entrance gate.

5.2.2.2 Location

Fishway entrances must be located at points where fish can easily locate the attraction flow and enter the fishway. When choosing an entrance location, high-velocity and turbulent zones in a powerhouse or spillway tailrace should be avoided in favor of relatively tranquil zones adjacent to these areas. A site-specific assessment must be conducted to determine entrance location and entrance jet orientation. A physical hydraulic model is often the best tool for determining this information (Bell 1991).

The fishway entrance should be located as far upstream as possible since fish will seek the farthest upstream point (Bell 1991). This is especially the case with low flow entrances. This guideline is subject to adjustment by NMFS based on site-specific constraints that include the configuration of the project, flow level, and flow patterns associated with powerhouse and spill discharge in relation to site conditions.

Some fishway entrances at a project should be located on the shoreline (Bell 1991). This is because fish orient to shorelines when migrating upstream. Locating an entrance on the shoreline takes advantage of this behavior, where the shoreline serves to lead fish to the entrance.

One of the most significant design decisions for a fishway entrance is its location (WDFW 2000). Turbulence can be a barrier to fish passage because velocities, turbulence, upwells, reverse currents, and aeration can affect attraction and access to fishways (WDFW 2000). At locations where the tailrace is wide, shallow, and turbulent, excavation to create a deeper, less-turbulent holding zone adjacent to the fishway entrance(s) may be required. Therefore, it is important to fully characterize and understand flow patterns when locating a fishway entrance at a site.

1316 **5.2.2.3 Additional entrances**

1317 *If the site has multiple zones where fish accumulate, each zone must have a minimum of*
1318 *one fishway entrance. For long powerhouses or dams, additional entrances may be required.*
1319 *Multiple entrances are usually required at sites where the high and low design flows create*
1320 *different tailwater conditions. All entrances must meet the requirements of Section 5.2.*

1321 Since tailrace hydraulic conditions usually change with project operations and hydrologic
1322 events, it is often necessary to provide two or more fishway entrances to accommodate the
1323 differences between high- and low-flow river conditions (often referred to as high- and low-flow
1324 entrances). When switching between high- and low-flow conditions, it is often necessary to
1325 close some entrances that are operating poorly or those the fish can no longer access, and open
1326 others where fish are congregating and holding.

1327 **5.2.2.4 Attraction flow**

1328 *Additional attraction flow from the fishway entrance is needed to extend the area of*
1329 *intensity of velocity of the outflow (from the entrance) to increase fish attraction into the*
1330 *entrance (Clay 1995). Attraction flow from the fishway entrance should be between 5% and*
1331 *10% of the fish passage high design flow (Chapter 4) for streams with mean annual streamflows*
1332 *exceeding 500 ft³/s. For smaller streams, when feasible, attraction flows up to 100% of*
1333 *streamflow should be used.*

1334 Larinier et al. (2002) conclude that a major cause of poor fishway performance is a lack
1335 of adequate attraction flow. At dams, the entrance flow for fish attraction must be sufficient to
1336 compete with spillway or powerhouse discharge flow (Bates 1992). Generally speaking, the
1337 higher the percentages of total river flow used for attraction into the fishway, the more effective
1338 the facility will be in providing upstream passage. The proportion of attraction flow needed is
1339 based on extensive research and results of laboratory studies.⁴ The proportion selected must be
1340 sufficient enough to allow fish to both find and want to enter fishway entrances.

1341 Under conditions where ladder entrances are optimally situated near the impediment and
1342 fish are naturally led to an entrance, an attraction flow of 5% of the fish passage design flow is
1343 used. However, some situations may require that more than 10% of the passage high design flow
1344 be used. For example, if a site features obscure approach routes to the passage facility or if
1345 entrances are located in a less than optimal location, a higher proportion of the design flow is
1346 needed as attraction flow. Additionally, facilities with multiple entrances may require more
1347 attraction flow (not to exceed a total of 10% of the fish passage design flow).

1348 Powerhouse and spillway flows are not considered part of the proportion of project flow
1349 used for fishway attraction. Powerhouse and spillway flows should be shaped, and turbine unit
1350 and spill gate operation prioritized, to create tailrace conditions that naturally lead to and allow
1351 fish to rapidly locate the fishway entrances (Bell 1991).

⁴ For example, Weaver (1963) conducted a study wherein he provided salmon and steelhead with a choice of entering adjacent channels of the same width but different velocities; a higher proportion chose to enter the channel with higher velocity.

1352 **5.2.2.5 Hydraulic drop**

1353 *The fishway entrance hydraulic drop (also called entrance head) must be maintained*
1354 *between 1 and 1.5 feet, depending on the species present at the site, and designed to operate*
1355 *from 0.5 to 2 feet of hydraulic drop (USFWS 1960; Junge and Carnegie 1972).*

1356 A range of 1 to 1.5 feet is considered a normal operating range that helps establish
1357 streaming flow conditions (Bates 1992). Gauley et al. (1966) found in laboratory studies that
1358 Chinook salmon and steelhead made significantly faster ascents up an experimental ladder with
1359 orifice flow and flow over a weir when head on the weir was increased from 0.95 to 1.2 feet.

1360 The hydraulic drop criterion is based in part on results of laboratory studies where an
1361 increasing number of Chinook and sockeye salmon and steelhead failed to enter all entrances
1362 tested when head was increased from 2 to 3 feet. Pink and chum salmon have more specific
1363 requirements. Fish from these species can easily swim through an entrance with 1.5 feet or more
1364 of head differential, but they will not jump even a portion of that height (Bates 1992).

1365 **5.2.2.6 Dimensions**

1366 *For larger streams (i.e., streams with a mean annual streamflow greater than 500 ft³/s),*
1367 *the minimum fishway entrance width should be 4 feet, and the entrance depth should be at least*
1368 *6 feet, although the shape of the entrance is dependent on attraction flow requirements and*
1369 *should be shaped to accommodate site conditions.*

1370 *For smaller streams (i.e., streams with a mean annual streamflow less than 500 ft³/s), the*
1371 *ladder entrances should be as large as possible to maximize fish attraction and minimize*
1372 *plugging by debris. The minimum size for an orifice-style entrance should be 1.5 feet by 1.5 feet,*
1373 *although a size of 2 feet by 2 feet is preferred. The minimum width for a vertical slot-style*
1374 *entrance should be 1.25 feet if large Chinook salmon are present and 1 foot otherwise, and the*
1375 *depth (i.e., bottom of the slot to the tailwater level) should be at least 2 times the slot width.*

1376 In general, the dimensions of the fishway entrance should create a compact, strong
1377 attraction flow jet that projects out of the entrance a significant distance into the tailrace. For
1378 identical water velocities, attraction jets created by entrances that are small, narrow, and deep, or
1379 are wide and shallow, do not project as far into the tailrace as does a compact entrance
1380 (Section 5.2.2.8; also, see requirements for mainstem Columbia and Snake rivers in
1381 Appendix G). The entrance width criterion is based partly on results of laboratory studies where
1382 Chinook salmon and steelhead preferred 3.9-foot-wide entrances over 1.5-foot-wide entrances
1383 under a constant velocity condition of 8 ft/s and lighted conditions. However, under dark
1384 conditions, all of these species preferred the wider opening, and coho salmon preferred the wider
1385 opening under both lighted and dark conditions (Weaver et al. 1976).

1386 For ladder entrances at facilities located in small streams, orifice size is based on the
1387 minimum orifice size for an Ice Harbor-style ladder (Section 5.5.3.3). For a slot-style entrance at
1388 a facility in a small stream, the slot width is based on the minimum slot widths for vertical slot
1389 ladders (Section 5.5.3.1), and the minimum depth is based on the square area of a 1.5-foot by
1390 1.5-foot orifice. For example, the criterion above states that slot depth (the depth from the
1391 bottom of the vertical slot-style entrance to the tailwater water surface elevation) should be

1392 double the slot width, and the minimum width should be 1.25 feet if large Chinook salmon are
1393 present and 1 foot otherwise. Therefore, when sizing a 1-foot-wide slot, the design should
1394 submerge the slot 2 feet, which is close to the 2.25 square foot (ft²) open area of a 1.5-foot by
1395 1.5-foot orifice.

1396 **5.2.2.7 Types of entrances**

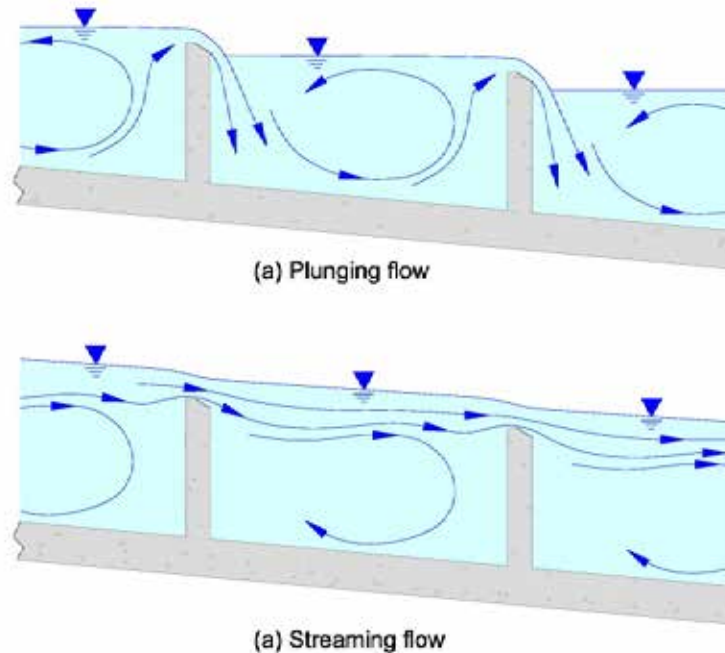
1397 *Fishway entrances may be adjustable submerged weirs, vertical slots, orifices, or other*
1398 *shapes, provided that the requirements specified in Section 5.2.2 are achieved.*

1399 Care should be taken to select a fishway entrance that generates a good attraction jet and
1400 is passable by all species of interest (Junge and Carnegie 1972). For example, American shad
1401 typically refuse to pass through orifices. Therefore, at sites where American shad are present,
1402 orifice entrances should be avoided, and surface routes in fishways are required (Larinier et al.
1403 2002). This is true of all species in the genus *Alosa*. Also, American shad orient to walls when
1404 migrating through fishways and can be trapped in corners if no surface-oriented route is available
1405 (Junge and Carnegie 1972; Bell 1991; WDFW 2000).

1406 **5.2.2.8 Flow conditions**

1407 *The fishway entrance must create either streaming flow or hydraulic conditions similar to*
1408 *a submerged jet.*

1409 The desired flow condition for entrance weir and slot discharge jet hydraulics is
1410 streaming flow (WDFW 2000). A streaming flow is an intact plume of water moving nearly
1411 horizontal near the water surface or at the elevation of an orifice entrance. In contrast, plunging
1412 flow drops vertically over an entrance sill or weir and then upwells downstream a few feet from
1413 an entrance. Plunging flow sets up a hydraulic roll where surface flow is moving in an upstream
1414 direction toward the entrance (Figure 5-2). This induces fish to jump at the flow, which may
1415 cause injuries, and it presents hydraulic conditions that some species may not be able to pass or
1416 may refuse to pass. This includes American shad and pink and chum salmon. Plunging flow
1417 also directs the attraction jet downward toward the stream bottom rather than across the tailrace.
1418 Streaming flow may be accomplished by placing the entrance weir (or invert of the slot)
1419 elevation such that flow over the weir falls into a receiving pool with a water surface elevation
1420 above the weir crest elevation (Katopodis 1992).



1421
 1422 Figure 5-2. Plunging (a) and streaming (b) flows in pool and weir style of fishways

1423 **5.2.2.9 Orientation**

1424 *Generally, low-flow entrances should be oriented nearly perpendicular to the streamflow*
 1425 *(Figure 5-1; Bates 1992). High-flow entrances should be oriented to be more parallel to*
 1426 *streamflow or at an angle away from the shoreline (Figure 5-1). A site-specific assessment must*
 1427 *be conducted to determine entrance location and entrance jet orientation. A physical hydraulic*
 1428 *model is often the best tool for determining this information; this model is used to test various*
 1429 *design alternatives that favor fish passage (Bell 1991).*

1430 Low-flow entrances are designed to be used by fish during periods when flow conditions
 1431 approach the low design flow. They are generally the entrances furthest upstream and closest to
 1432 the passage barrier. High-flow entrances are designed for use during periods when flow
 1433 conditions approach the high design flow. Bates (1992) suggests that high-flow entrances be
 1434 placed at a 30-degree angle to the high-flow streamline, ideally along the edge of a high-flow
 1435 hydraulic barrier. In general, high-flow entrances are located slightly downstream from the
 1436 barrier at a point in the tailrace where the turbulence from the barrier under high flow conditions
 1437 has just dissipated.

1438 **5.2.2.10 Staff gages**

1439 *The fishway entrance design must include staff gages to allow for a simple determination*
 1440 *of whether the entrance head criterion (Section 5.2.2.5) is met. Staff gages must be located in*
 1441 *the entrance pool and in the tailwater just outside of the fishway entrance in an area visible from*
 1442 *an easy point of access. Gages should be readily accessible to facilitate in-season cleaning.*

1443 Staff gages are important tools for determining whether a fish ladder entrance is meeting
1444 criteria. Care should be taken when locating staff gages to avoid placement in turbulent areas
1445 and locations where flow is accelerating toward a fishway entrance.

1446 **5.2.2.11 Entrance pools**

1447 *The fishway entrance pool must be designed to combine ladder flow with auxiliary water*
1448 *system (AWS; also known as auxiliary water supply system) flow in a manner that encourages*
1449 *fish to move from the entrances in an upstream direction and optimizes the attraction of fish to*
1450 *lower fishway weirs.*

1451 The fishway entrance pool is at the lowest elevation of the upstream passage system. It
1452 discharges flow into the tailrace through the entrance gates to attract upstream migrants. In
1453 many fish ladder systems, the entrance pool is the largest and most important pool in terms of
1454 providing proper guidance of fish from the entrance to the ladder section of the upstream passage
1455 facility. Ladder flow and AWS flow through diffuser gratings are combined in the pool to form
1456 the entrance attraction flow (Section 5.3, Figure 5-1).

1457 Attraction to the lower fishway weirs may be optimized by the following:

- 1458 · Shaping the entrance pool to create a natural funnel leading fish to the ladder weirs
- 1459 · Angling vertical AWS diffusers toward the ladder weirs
- 1460 · Locating the jet from the ladder weir adjacent to the upstream terminus of the vertical AWS
1461 diffusers

1462 The pool geometry will normally influence the location of attraction flow diffusers.

1463 **5.2.2.12 Transport velocity**

1464 *Transport velocities between the fishway entrance and first fishway weir, fishway*
1465 *channels, and over-submerged fishway weirs must be between 1.5 and 4 ft/s (Bell 1991).*

1466 Gauley et al. (1966) reported that Chinook and sockeye salmon and steelhead passage
1467 times did not differ significantly between water velocities of 1 and 4 ft/s in an experimental
1468 270-foot-long transportation channel. However, Weaver (1963) reported that Chinook salmon
1469 moved progressively slower in a test flume as velocities increased from 2 to 8 ft/s.

1470 Note that as tailwater level rises and the lower fishway weirs become submerged, it
1471 becomes necessary to increase the flow in this area of the ladder to meet the transport velocity
1472 criterion (Bell 1991).

1473 An AWS can be used to supply additional water through wall or floor diffusers. Care
1474 should be taken to design the fishway weirs that will be submerged to accommodate the
1475 additional flow in the ladder so that other fish passage (or hydraulic) criteria are not exceeded.
1476 The transport channel velocity guidelines do not apply to individual ladder pools since these are
1477 governed by design criteria specific to these pools.

5.3 Auxiliary Water Systems

5.3.1 Description and Purpose

An AWS must be used to supply additional water to the fishway when the required attraction flow (as specified in Section 5.2.2.4) is greater than ladder flow.

Auxiliary water is often required at fishways to provide additional attraction flow from the entrance pool to fishway entrances (Bell 1991). Adding AWS flow is based on the concept that fish migrating upstream are attracted by flow velocity of certain magnitudes, which the fish swim against to continue their migration upstream (Clay 1995). Auxiliary water can also be supplied through an AWS to areas between fishway weirs that are partially submerged by high tailwater elevations and fail to meet the flow velocity criterion, as discussed in Section 5.2.2.12. In addition, an AWS can be used to provide make-up flows to various transition pools in the ladder such as bifurcation or trifurcation pools, multiple entrances, pools in fish trapping facilities, exit control sections, and counting station pools.

5.3.1.1 AWS supply source

The source of water for the AWS flow should be of the same quality (e.g., temperature and water chemistry) as the flow in the ladder (i.e., the receiving water).

The AWS flow is usually routed from the forebay to the ladder via gravity, but water quality may vary from the ladder flow depending on the location of the AWS intake. The AWS flow can also be pumped from the tailrace or delivered via a combination of gravity and pumped sources. Differences in the water sources could cause fish to reject the ladder.

5.3.2 Specific Criteria and Guidelines – AWS Fine Trash Racks

5.3.2.1 Bar spacing

A fine trash rack must be provided at the AWS intake with clear space between the vertical flat bars of 0.875 inch or less.

The purpose of an AWS fine trash rack is to stop debris from entering the AWS, which might plug the upstream side of the diffuser panel. Since the normal, clear opening between bars on the diffuser panels is 1 inch (Section 5.3.7), the AWS fine trash rack should be 0.875 inch or less. At sites where Pacific lamprey may be present and diffusers with 0.75-inch clear openings are used (Section 5.3.7), the AWS fine trash rack should have a maximum clear opening of 0.625 inch or less.

5.3.2.2 Velocity

Maximum velocity through the AWS fine trash rack must be less than 1 ft/s, as calculated by dividing the maximum flow by the submerged area of the fine trash rack.

1511 **5.3.2.3 Cleaning consideration**

1512 *The support structure for the fine trash rack must not interfere with cleaning*
1513 *requirements and must provide access for debris raking and removal.*

1514 **5.3.2.4 Slope**

1515 *The fine trash rack should be installed at a 1H:5V (horizontal:vertical) or flatter slope*
1516 *for ease of cleaning. The fine trash rack design must accommodate maintenance requirements*
1517 *by considering access for personnel, travel clearances for manual or automated raking, and*
1518 *removal of debris.*

1519 **5.3.2.5 Staff gages and head differential**

1520 *Staff gages must be installed to indicate head differential across the AWS intake fine*
1521 *trash rack and must be located to facilitate observation and in-season cleaning. Head*
1522 *differential across the AWS intake fine trash rack must not exceed 0.3 foot in order to facilitate*
1523 *cleaning, minimize velocity hot spots, and maintain hydraulic efficiency in gravity and pumped*
1524 *systems.*

1525 Staff gages are used for determining whether the head across a trash rack is within
1526 criteria or not. Care should be taken when locating staff gages so that they can be easily read by
1527 personnel.

1528 **5.3.2.6 Structural integrity**

1529 *AWS intake fine trash racks must be of sufficient structural integrity to avoid the*
1530 *permanent deformation associated with maximum occlusion.*

1531 **5.3.3 Specific Criteria and Guidelines – AWS Screens**

1532 *In instances where the AWS poses a risk to the passage of juvenile salmonids because of*
1533 *its design involving high head and convoluted flow paths, the AWS intake must be screened to*
1534 *the standards specified in Chapter 10 to prevent juvenile salmonids from entering the AWS.*

1535 Trip gates, pressure relief valves, or other alternate intakes to the AWS may be included
1536 in the design to ensure that AWS flow targets are achieved if screen reliability is uncertain under
1537 high river flow conditions. Debris and sediment issues may preclude the use of juvenile fish
1538 screen criteria for AWS intakes at certain sites. Passage risk through an AWS will be assessed
1539 by NMFS on a site-specific basis to determine whether screening of the AWS is warranted and
1540 how to provide the highest reliability possible.

1541 **5.3.4 Specific Criteria and Guidelines – AWS Flow Control**

1542 *The AWS must have a flow control device located sufficiently far away from the AWS*
1543 *intake to ensure the flow at the AWS fine trash rack or screen is uniformly distributed. To*
1544 *facilitate cleaning, the flow control system must allow flow to be easily shut off for maintenance*
1545 *and then restarted (and reset) to proper operating conditions.*

1546 The flow control device may consist of a control gate, pump control, turbine intake flow
1547 control, or other flow control systems located sufficiently far away from the AWS intake to
1548 ensure uniform flow distribution at the AWS fine trash rack for all AWS flows. Flow control is
1549 necessary to ensure that the correct quantity of AWS flow is discharged at the appropriate
1550 location during a full range of forebay and tailwater levels.

1551 **5.3.5 Specific Criteria and Guidelines – AWS Excess Energy Dissipation**

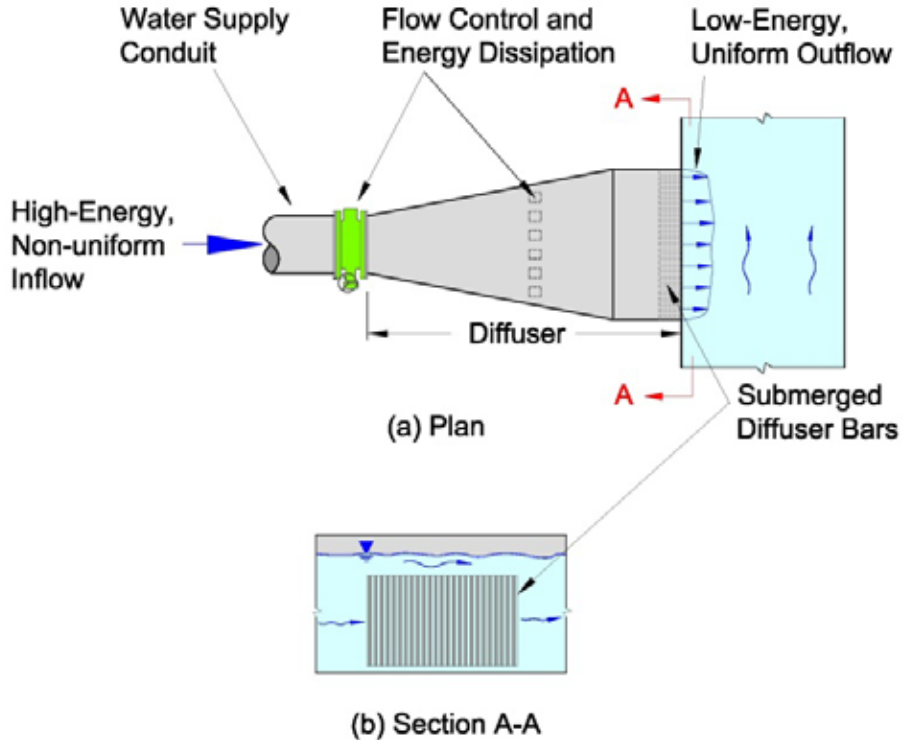
1552 *Excess energy must be dissipated from AWS flow prior to passage through diffusers.*

1553 Dissipation of excess energy is necessary to minimize surging and induce relatively
1554 uniform velocity distribution at the diffusers because surging and non-uniform velocities may
1555 cause adult fish jumping and associated injuries or excess migration delay. The introduction of
1556 highly turbulent or aerated water will discourage fish from entering or passing through a fishway
1557 and possibly result in fish delay or injury (Clay 1995). Examples of methods to dissipate excess
1558 AWS flow energy include the following:

- 1559 · Routing flow into a fishway pool with adequate volume (Section 5.3.6.2)
- 1560 · Passing AWS flow through a turbine
- 1561 · Passing AWS flow through a series of valves, weirs, or orifices
- 1562 · Passing AWS flow through a pipeline with concentric rings or other hydraulic transitions
1563 designed to induce head loss

1564 All of these dissipation systems require that AWS flow passes through a baffle system
1565 that has a porosity of less than 40% to reduce surging through fishway entrance pool diffusers.
1566 Adjustable baffles may be required in some systems to properly balance flow across the diffuser.

1567 Figure 5-3 provides a schematic of a fishway AWS diffuser system showing the
1568 components needed, and their shape and arrangement, to control water flow rate and convert
1569 high-velocity, high-pressure, non-uniform flow into low-energy uniform flow.



1570
 1571 Figure 5-3. Schematic of a fishway AWS diffuser system in plan (a) and section (b) views

1572 **5.3.5.1 Energy dissipation pool volume**

1573 *An energy dissipation pool in an AWS should have a minimum water volume established*
 1574 *by the formula shown in Equation 5-1.*

1575
$$V = \frac{(\gamma)(Q)(H)}{16 \text{ ft-lb / ft}^3/\text{s}} \quad (5-1)$$

1576 where:

- 1577 V = pool volume in cubic feet (ft³)
 1578 γ = unit of water, 64.2 pounds (lb) per ft³
 1579 Q = AWS flow, in ft³/s
 1580 H = energy head of pool-to-pool flow, in feet drop into the AWS pool

1581 Note that the pool volumes required for AWS pools are smaller than those required for
 1582 fishway pools. This is due to the need to provide resting areas in fishway pools and because
 1583 AWS systems require additional elements (e.g., diffusers and valves) to dissipate energy and are
 1584 not pathways for upstream fish passage.

1585 **5.3.6 Specific Criteria and Guidelines – AWS Diffusers**

1586 *The spaces between bars of a diffuser must be sized to prevent fish passage and injury*
 1587 *(Bell 1991; Bates 1992). For adult salmonid passage, the maximum clear spacing between bars*

1588 *is 1 inch between diffusers bars. At sites where adult Pacific lamprey may be present, diffusers*
1589 *should have a maximum 0.75-inch clear spacing between bars.*

1590 *Wall diffusers must consist of non-corrosive, vertically oriented diffuser panels of*
1591 *vertically oriented flat bar stock. Similarly, floor diffusers must consist of non-corrosive,*
1592 *horizontally oriented diffuser panels of horizontally oriented flat bar stock. Orientation of flat*
1593 *bar stock must maximize the open area of the diffuser panel. If a smaller species or life stage of*
1594 *fish is present, smaller clear spacings between bar stock may be required.*

1595 **5.3.6.1 Material**

1596 *The bars and picket panels used as part of AWS diffuser systems should be made of*
1597 *aluminum or epoxy-coated carbon steel. The use of submerged galvanized steel should be*
1598 *minimized or eliminated, especially when used in close proximity to fish (i.e., fishways).*

1599 Galvanized steel is coated with zinc, a metal that can be toxic to fish.

1600 **5.3.6.2 Velocity and orientation**

1601 *The maximum AWS diffuser velocity must be less than 1 ft/s for wall diffusers and 0.5 ft/s*
1602 *for floor diffusers based on the total submerged diffuser panel area (Bell 1991). Wall diffusers*
1603 *should only be used when the orientation can be designed to assist with guiding fish within the*
1604 *fishway. Diffuser velocities should be nearly uniform, which may require the use of porosity*
1605 *control panels (Section 5.3.7.3). The face of the diffuser panels (i.e., the surface exposed to the*
1606 *fish) should be flush with the wall or floor.*

1607 These criteria are based on *Design of Fishways and Other Fish Facilities* (Clay 1995),
1608 which states that 1 ft/s “has been adopted as the best compromise between practicality and
1609 efficiency.” These criteria are also based on the results of laboratory studies where spring- and
1610 fall-run Chinook salmon and steelhead passage times increased when diffuser flows were added
1611 and were progressively longer as floor diffuser velocity increased from 0.25 to 1.25 ft/s (Gauley
1612 et al. 1966).

1613 An example of wall diffusers being used to assist in guiding fish is when the diffusers in
1614 the entrance pool of a fishway are situated such that fish are naturally lead upstream to the first
1615 ladder pool.

1616 When wall diffusers are used in conjunction with a half Ice Harbor-style ladder, the
1617 diffuser should be located on the same side as the overflow weir, and the diffuser bars should be
1618 oriented horizontally.

1619 **5.3.6.3 Porosity control baffles**

1620 *Similar to juvenile fish screens, diffusers should include a system of porosity control*
1621 *baffles located just upstream of the diffuser pickets to ensure that average velocities at the face*
1622 *of the diffuser are uniform and can meet criteria (Section 5.3.6.2).*

1623 The purpose of the porosity control panels is to control the amount of flow through the
1624 diffuser pickets and create a uniform flow condition at the face of the pickets.

1625 **5.3.6.4 Debris removal**

1626 *The AWS design must include access for personnel to remove debris from each diffuser*
1627 *unless the AWS intake is required per the criteria listed in Section 5.3.4 to be equipped with a*
1628 *juvenile fish screen (Chapter 10).*

1629 **5.3.6.5 Edges**

1630 *All flat bar diffuser edges and surfaces exposed to fish must be rounded or ground*
1631 *smooth to the touch, with all edges aligning in a single smooth plane to reduce the potential for*
1632 *contact injury.*

1633 **5.3.6.6 Lamprey passage**

1634 *At sites where Pacific lamprey are present, horizontal diffusers should not extend the*
1635 *complete width of the floor of the fishway or entrance pool. A solid surface, approximately*
1636 *1.5 feet wide, should be located along the floor between the lateral sides of the diffuser panels*
1637 *and the base of either wall.*

1638 **5.3.6.7 Elevation**

1639 *Wall AWS diffusers must be submerged throughout the range of operation (i.e., the top*
1640 *elevation of the wall diffuser must be below the lowest water surface elevation that will occur*
1641 *based on the fishway design).*

1642 This is to prevent water from cascading through the diffuser, which can induce fish to
1643 leap at the surface disturbance.

1644 **5.3.7 Specific Criteria and Guidelines – Bedload Removal Devices**

1645 *At locations where bedload may cause accumulations at the AWS intake, sluice gates or*
1646 *other simple bedload removal devices should be included in the design.*

1647 **5.4 Transport Channels**

1648 **5.4.1 Description and Purpose**

1649 A transport channel conveys flows between different sectors of the upstream passage
1650 facility, providing a route for fish to pass.

1651 **5.4.2 Specific Criteria and Guidelines – Transport Channels**

1652 **5.4.2.1 Velocity range**

1653 *The transport channel velocities must be between 1.5 and 4 ft/s (Gauley et al. 1966;*
1654 *Bates 1992), including flow velocity over or between fishway weirs inundated by high tailwater*
1655 *(Bell 1991).*

1656 Gauley et al. (1966) reported that Chinook and sockeye salmon and steelhead passage
1657 times did not differ significantly between water velocities of 1 and 4 ft/s in an experimental
1658 270-foot-long transportation channel. However, Weaver (1963) reported that Chinook salmon
1659 moved progressively slower in a test flume as velocities increased from 2 to 8 ft/s.

1660 **5.4.2.2 Dimensions**

1661 *The transport channels should be a minimum of 5 feet deep and 4 feet wide.*

1662 This is based on providing the narrowest, shallowest flow path that adult fish are known
1663 to move through readily while also displaying the least amount of fallback behavior and delay.
1664 In addition, this size of channel relates to the goal of keeping water velocities in the transport
1665 channel low.

1666 **5.4.2.3 Lighting**

1667 *Ambient natural lighting should be provided in all transport channels, if possible.*

1668 If ambient (natural) lighting is not available, acceptable artificial lighting must be used.
1669 In laboratory tests, fish were presented with the choice of a large entrance (3.9 feet by 3.9 feet)
1670 that was dark or a smaller entrance (1.5 feet by 2 feet) that was lighted. Study results corroborate
1671 the understanding that fish prefer lighted entrances and channels: 80% of Chinook salmon, 90%
1672 of coho salmon, 69% of steelhead, and 86% of sockeye salmon chose the lighted entrance
1673 (Bates 1992).

1674 **5.4.2.4 Design (general)**

1675 *Based on the literature and experiences of fish biologists at many facilities located in the*
1676 *WCR, the following features should be included in the design of transport channels:*

- 1677 · *The transport channels must be of open channel design (Bell 1991).*
- 1678 · *Designs must avoid hydraulic transitions or lighting transitions (USFWS 1960; Bell 1991).*
- 1679 · *Transport channels must not expose fish to any moving parts.*
- 1680 · *Transport channels should be designed so that there is no standing water in the channel*
1681 *when the system is dewatered.*
- 1682 · *Transport channels must be free of exposed edges that protrude from channel walls.*

1683

5.5 Fish Ladder Design

1684

5.5.1 Description and Purpose

1685

1686

1687

1688

1689

1690

1691

The purpose of a fish ladder is to convert total project head at the passage barrier into passable increments and provide suitable conditions for fish to hold, rest, and ultimately pass upstream. Nearly all of the energy from the upstream ladder pool is dissipated in the downstream ladder pool volume, resulting in a series of relatively calm pools that migrating fish may use to rest and stage before ascending upstream. The criteria provided in this section have been developed to provide conditions to pass all anadromous salmonid species upstream with minimal delay and injury.

1692

5.5.2 Common Types of Fish Ladders

1693

1694

1695

1696

Fish ladders or fishways, in one form or another, have been around for more than 300 years (Clay 1995). Over time, ladder designs have developed and evolved and have been adapted to meet site-specific conditions. For the purpose of this document, fish ladders are divided into the following two categories:

1697

- Pool-style ladders, including:

1698

- Vertical slot

1699

- Pool and weir

1700

- Weir and orifice

1701

- Pool and chute

1702

- Roughened chute-style ladders, including:

1703

- Denil steeppass

1704

- Alaska steeppass (ASP)

1705

The following sections present brief discussions of criteria and guidelines for the more common styles of fish ladders.

1706

1707

5.5.2.1 Vertical slot ladder

1708

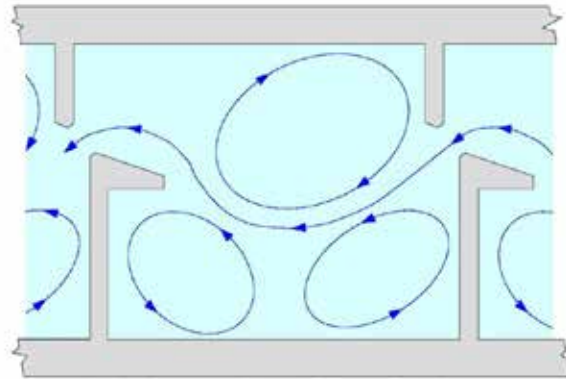
1709

1710

1711

1712

The vertical slot configuration is a pool-style of fish ladder (Figures 5-4 through 5-6; Table 5-1). The vertical slot ladder is suitable for passage impediments that have tailrace and forebay water surface elevations that fluctuate within large ranges. The maximum head differential—typically associated with the lowest river flows—establishes the design water surface profile, which usually parallels the fishway floor gradient.



(a) Generalized Flow Path



(b) In actual fishway pools

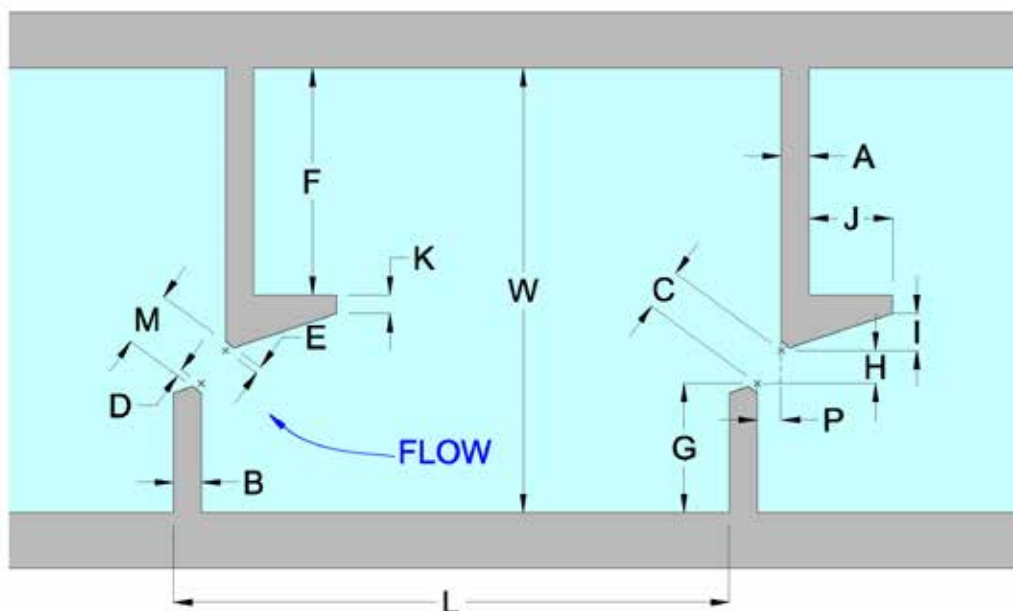
1713

1714 Figure 5-4. Plan view of a vertical slot ladder showing generalized flow paths



1715

1716 Figure 5-5. Oblique view of a vertical slot ladder baffle when dewatered



1717

1718 Figure 5-6. Dimensions of a typical vertical slot ladder pool

1719 (Note that information for Figure 5-6 is provided in Table 5-1. “D” is the dimension of the layout points used
 1720 during ladder design and construction (i.e., the framing and the form work for the concrete pours); it determines the
 1721 chamfer for the slot and the width of the slot; and knowing “D” allows the designer to layout the complex angles
 1722 used during construction.)

1723 Table 5-1. Dimensions for vertical slot ladder components

Dimension Nomenclature (Refer to Figure 5-6)		Dimensions (in feet)		
L	Pool length	10'0"	10'0"	10'0"
W	Pool width	6'0"	8'0"	8'0"
A	Long baffle width	0'6"	0'6"	0'6"
B	Short baffle width	0'6"	0'6"	0'6"
M	Slot width	1'0"	1'0"	1'3"
C	Slot width layout points	0'9"	0'9"	0'9"
D, E	Dimension “C” layout points (separation from baffles)	0'1½"	0'1½"	0'3"
F	Long baffle wall length	3'1"	4'1"	4'1"
G	Short baffle wall length (wall to layout point)	1'3¾"	2'3¾"	2'3¾"
I	Flow deflector width change	0'7"	0'8"	0'7"
J	Flow deflector length	1'3"	1'6"	1'3"
K	Flow deflector upstream width	0'5"	0'4"	0'5"

1724 The full-depth vertical slots allow fish passage at any depth (Clay 1995). Fish are
 1725 assumed to be able to move directly from slot to slot in a straight path, although this has not been
 1726 verified (Clay 1995). However, hydraulic studies have verified that velocity through the slot is
 1727 constant throughout the vertical profile (Katopodis 1992). The vertical slot is not well suited for

1728 species that require overflow weirs for passage or that tend to orient to walls such as American
1729 shad.

1730 **5.5.2.1.1 Vertical slot width**

1731 *For adult anadromous salmonids, slots should never be less than 1 foot in width. If*
1732 *larger Chinook salmon are expected to pass, the minimum slot width is 1.25 feet (Clay 1995).*

1733 The passage corridor typically consists of 1- to 1.25-foot-wide vertical slots between
1734 fishway pools. However, narrower slots have been recommended (Clay 1995) and used in
1735 applications for other fish species that are smaller than salmon or steelhead. In some situations,
1736 wider slots (or two slots per ladder weir) are used if AWS flow is not being added to the ladder.

1737 Vertical slot ladders tend to require more water to operate properly compared with other
1738 styles of fishways because of the width and depth of the slot and the head differential between
1739 pools. Low sills can be added to the bottom of each slot to reduce the overall amount of flow in
1740 the ladder that is required. However, these sills may block the passage of species that prefer or
1741 need to travel along the floor of a ladder.

1742 **5.5.2.1.2 Vertical slot geometry (pool size)**

1743 *Standard, proven design dimensions must be adhered to unless it can be proven through*
1744 *physical hydraulic modeling that changes do not affect the function of the ladder.*

1745 Vertical slot ladders are sensitive to changes in pool geometry (e.g., pool width, length,
1746 slope, and slot width; Clay 1995), and initial construction costs are higher than other types of
1747 ladders because of the more complex design and concrete placement.

1748 **5.5.2.2 Pool and weir ladder**

1749 The simplest style of fish ladder is the pool and weir ladder (Bell 1991); it is also one of
1750 the oldest styles of fish ladder. The pool and weir fish ladder passes the entire, almost constant,
1751 fishway flow through successive pools separated by overflow weirs that break the total project
1752 head into passable increments (Figure 5-7). This design allows fish to ascend to higher
1753 elevations by passing over weirs, and it provides resting zones within each pool. When passing
1754 this style of ladder, fish must leap or swim over the weir flow. Pools are sized to allow flow
1755 energy to be nearly fully dissipated through turbulence within each receiving pool (Clay 1995).



1756

1757 Figure 5-7. Examples of pool and weir ladders

1758 (Note that the orifices in the weir wall on the left-side photo are to drain each of the pools and are not meant for fish
1759 passage.)

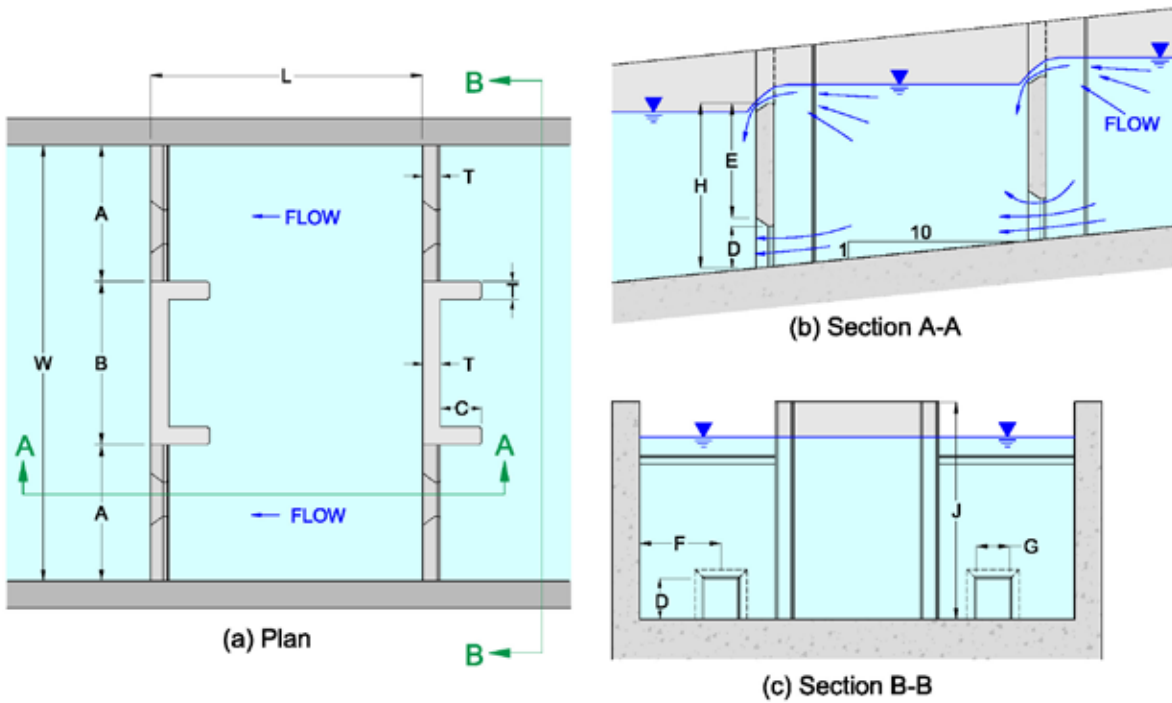
1760 In contrast to vertical slot ladders, pool and weir ladders require nearly constant water
1761 surface elevations in the forebay pool to function properly (Bell 1991; Clay 1995). When the
1762 water surface elevation fluctuates outside of the design elevation, too much or too little flow
1763 enters the fishway. This flow fluctuation may affect upstream passage by causing fishway pools
1764 to be excessively turbulent or providing insufficient flow. To accommodate forebay fluctuations
1765 and maintain a consistent flow in the ladder, pool and weir ladders are often designed with an
1766 AWS (Section 5.3) and fishway exit control section (Section 5.7; Bell 1991). To accommodate
1767 tailwater fluctuations, pool and weir ladder designs may include an adjustable fishway entrance
1768 (i.e., adjustable geometry and attraction flow) and an AWS to provide additional flow to meet the
1769 channel velocity criterion (Section 5.4.2.1; Bell 1991).

1770 5.5.2.3 Weir and orifice ladder

1771 The weir and orifice fish ladder passes flow from the forebay through successive fishway
1772 pools connected by overflow weirs and submerged orifices, which divide the total project head
1773 into passable increments (Figures 5-8 and 5-9, Table 5-2; Clay 1995). Weir and orifice ladders
1774 are similar to pool and weir ladders in the following ways:

- 1775 · Weir and orifice ladders require nearly constant water surface elevations in the forebay pool;
1776 water surface elevations outside of the design elevation result in too much or too little flow
1777 entering the fishway, which may affect fish passage due to turbulence or insufficient flow.
- 1778 · Weir and orifice ladders are often designed with an AWS and fishway exit control section
1779 (Section 5.7), an adjustable fishway entrance (i.e., adjustable geometry and attraction flow),

1780 and an AWS to provide additional low diffusers to meet the transport channel velocity
 1781 criterion (Section 5.4.2.1).



1782
 1783 Figure 5-8. Ice Harbor-style weir and orifice ladder (adapted from Gauley et al. 1966)
 1784 (Note that information for Figure 5-8 is provided in Table 5-2.)



1785
 1786 Figure 5-9. Overhead views of Ice Harbor-style weir and orifice fish ladders

1787 Table 5-2. Dimensions for Ice Harbor fishways

Dimension Nomenclature (Refer to Figure 5-8)		Dimensions (in feet)	
		Bell 1991	Gauley et al. 1966
L	Pool length	8–20	10
W	Pool width	6–20	16
A	Weir length	1.5–5	5
B	Center baffle width	W/2*	6
C	Flow stabilizer length	NA	1’6”
D	Orifice height	1’6”	1’6”
E	Baffle height above orifice	4’3”	4’6”
F	Wall to orifice center line	NA	3
G	Orifice width	1’3”	1’6”
H	Weir height	6	6
J	Wing baffle height	8	8
T	Weir and baffle thickness	NA	NA

1788 Notes:

1789 * See “W” in panel (a) of Figure 5-8.

1790 Dimensions listed under Bell (1991) are taken from

1791 https://www.nwfsc.noaa.gov/assets/26/7778_08132014_135336_Gauley.et.al.1966.pdf.

1792 Dimensions listed under Gauley et al. 1966 are taken from the report located here:

1793 https://www.nwfsc.noaa.gov/assets/26/7778_08132014_135336_Gauley.et.al.1966.pdf.

1794 NA: not available

1795 When passing this style of ladder, fish have the choice of leaping or swimming over the
 1796 weir or swimming through the orifice, and it is NMFS’ experience that most salmonids prefer to
 1797 swim through the orifice. The Ice Harbor ladder is an example of a weir and orifice fish ladder.
 1798 This ladder design was developed in the 1960s for use at Ice Harbor Dam on the Snake River in
 1799 Washington by the Bureau of Commercial Fisheries at USACE Fisheries-Engineering Research
 1800 Laboratory (FERL), which was located at the Bonneville Dam on the Columbia River in Oregon
 1801 (Figure G-1 in Appendix G). Fish passage research was conducted at FERL from 1955 until it
 1802 was decommissioned in the 1980s (see Appendix I for a listing of reports of research conducted
 1803 at the FERL). The research provided basic knowledge of the behavior, abilities, and
 1804 requirements of fish in fish passage situations (Collins 1976).

1805 Development and testing at FERL resulted in the design of the 1-on-10 slope ladder for
 1806 Ice Harbor Dam, which was studied in a full-scale section of the ladder consisting of six ladder
 1807 pools. A prototype ladder was tested during its first year of operation at Ice Harbor Dam. The
 1808 design is a pool and weir ladder with submerged orifices, flow stabilizers, and a non-overflow
 1809 section in the middle of each weir (Figures 5-6 through 5-9). See Table 5-2 for typical
 1810 dimension of this type of fishway. There is a 1-foot rise between pools, and the average water
 1811 depth under normal operating conditions is 6.5 feet (Gauley et al. 1966). The Ice Harbor-style of
 1812 ladder includes two rectangular orifices centered on and located directly below each overflow
 1813 weir. The position and depth of the orifices were found to have a significant effect on the

1814 passage of fish through rectangular submerged orifices (Thompson et al. 1967). The orifice and
1815 weir combinations are located on each side of the longitudinal centerline of the ladder. Between
1816 the two weirs is a slightly higher non-overflow wall with an upstream-projecting flow baffle
1817 located at each end. An adaptation for lower flow designs is the half Ice Harbor ladder design,
1818 which consists of a weir, an orifice, and a non-overflow wall between fishway pools.

1819 **5.5.2.4 Pool and chute ladder**

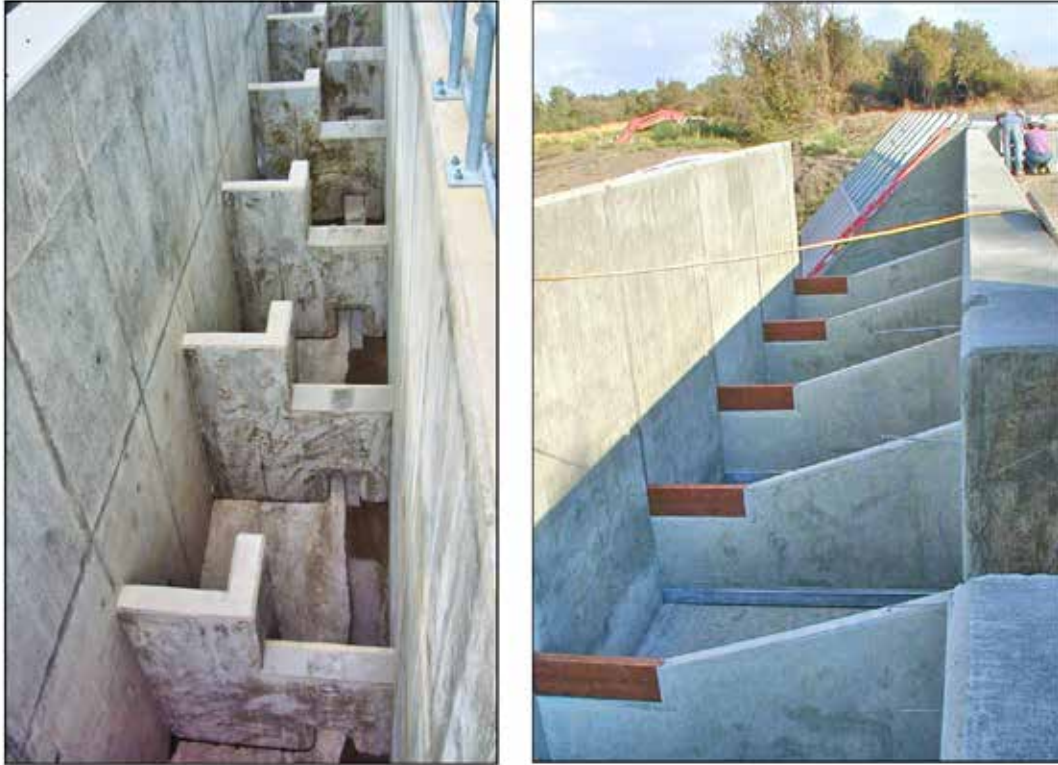
1820 A pool and chute ladder is a hybrid that operates under varying river flow conditions.
1821 This ladder is designed to operate as a pool and weir ladder at low river flows and as a
1822 roughened chute-style fishway at higher river flows (Figure 5-10). This ladder is an alternative
1823 style of ladder for sites with a low hydraulic drop that must pass a wide range of streamflows
1824 with a minimum of flow control features. Placement of stoplogs—a cumbersome and potentially
1825 hazardous operation—is required to optimize operation of this ladder. However, once suitable
1826 flow regimes are established, the need for additional stoplog placement may not be required.
1827 Criteria for this type of ladder design are still evolving, and design proposals will be assessed by
1828 NMFS on a site-specific basis. Bates (1992) provides specific criteria and guidelines for this
1829 style of ladder where fish have the option of swimming over, or leaping the overflow weir, or
1830 swimming through the orifice. The lateral slope of the weirs presents fish with flow conditions
1831 that range from plunging flow near the edges to streaming flow towards the center of the ladder.



1832
1833 Figure 5-10. Pool and chute ladder dewatered (at left) and watered (at right)

1834 **5.5.2.5 Half Ice Harbor and half-pool and chute ladders**

1835 The flow rate available to pass through a fishway at small projects is often too low to take
1836 advantage of the benefits of the standard Ice Harbor or pool and chute ladder designs. In these
1837 situations, it is possible to design and construct weirs shaped as one-half of an Ice Harbor-style
1838 weir and orifice ladder or one-half of a pool and chute-style ladder (Figure 5-11). These designs
1839 share the same advantages and disadvantages as their full-sized counterparts and must meet all of
1840 the design criteria for each type of full-sized ladder. The hydraulic design process used for half-
1841 ladders is analogous to the design process used for full-sized ladders.



1842
 1843 Figure 5-11. Half ladder designs for projects with reduced available fishway flows
 1844 (Note: panel on left is a half-Ice Harbor ladder weir and orifice design; panel on right is a half-pool and chute ladder
 1845 with weir design.)

1846 **5.5.3 Specific Criteria and Guidelines – Fish Ladder Design**

1847 **5.5.3.1 Hydraulic drop**

1848 *The maximum hydraulic drop between fish ladder pools must be 1 foot or less (Bell 1991;*
 1849 *Clay 1995). Where pink or chum salmon are present, the maximum hydraulic drop between*
 1850 *pools must be 0.75 foot or less (Bates 1992; Clay 1995).*

1851 **5.5.3.2 Flow depth**

1852 *Fishway overflow weirs should be designed to provide at least 1 foot (± 0.1 foot) of flow*
 1853 *depth over the weir crest (Clay 1995; WDFW 2000).*

1854 The depth must be indicated by locating a single staff gage in an observable,
 1855 hydraulically stable location that is representative of flow depth throughout the fishway. The
 1856 zero reading of the gage should be at the overflow weir crest elevation.

1857 **5.5.3.2.1 Streaming flow**

1858 *Some fish species will not leap or are poor leapers and will refuse to pass or become*
 1859 *delayed by plunging flow conditions in a ladder. They may also refuse to pass through the*
 1860 *orifices in a ladder (e.g., all shad species). For those species, streaming flow must be created*

1861 *between ladder pools to provide acceptable passage conditions. When pink or chum salmon are*
1862 *present, the upstream weir crest should be submerged by at least 0.5 foot by the downstream*
1863 *water surface level (Bates 1992). Where American shad are present, the upstream weir crest*
1864 *should be submerged by at least 0.3 foot by the downstream water surface level.*

1865 Streaming flow occurs when the weir is backwatered by the downstream weir
1866 (Bates 1992; Katapodis 1992). The transition between plunging flow and streaming flow is
1867 hydraulically unstable and should be avoided according to Bell (1991) and Bates (1992) because
1868 passage can be delayed when flow is in this transition. Hydraulic instability occurs in the
1869 transition regime between the upper range of plunging flow and the lower range of streaming
1870 flow. The instability can also cause large oscillations that are transmitted throughout the fishway
1871 because energy is not dissipated in each pool of the fishway, which makes the streaming flow jet
1872 difficult to manage. For these reasons, streaming flow in a fishway should be used cautiously
1873 (Bates 1992).

1874 Submerging the upstream weir crest by 0.3 foot is based on experience with adjusting
1875 ladder flows at Columbia River dams to pass American shad. In addition, Larinier and Travade
1876 (2002) state that a head of around 1.3 feet and streaming flow in an Ice Harbor-style ladder are
1877 needed for shad passage. Rideout et al. (1985) report substantial improvements in American
1878 shad passage at the Turners Falls dam fishway in Massachusetts when flow over weir crests was
1879 changed from plunging to streaming.

1880 **5.5.3.3 Pool dimensions**

1881 *The pool dimensions for pool and weir ladders should be a minimum of 8 feet long*
1882 *(upstream to downstream), 4 feet wide, and 6 feet deep (Clay 1995). For pool and orifice*
1883 *ladders, including the half Ice Harbor-style of ladder, the pool should be a minimum of 8 feet*
1884 *long, 6 feet wide, and 6 feet deep (Clay 1995). However, specific ladder designs may require*
1885 *pool dimensions that are different from the minimums specified in this criterion, depending on*
1886 *site conditions and ladder flows.*

1887 *For small stream ladders, Bell (1991) provides minimum dimensions for some pool and*
1888 *weir fishway designs. The minimum pool should not be less than 6 feet long, 3 feet deep, and*
1889 *4 feet wide. It is recommended that the fishway slope not exceed 1:8. For pools less than 8 feet*
1890 *in length, the drop between pools should be reduced proportionally. To allow for the proper*
1891 *dissipation of the orifice flow, the pool dimensions for a pool and orifice-style ladder should not*
1892 *be reduced (Clay 1995).*

1893 *Ladder pools should be designed so that there is no standing water in the pools when the*
1894 *system is dewatered. The floors of the ladder should be sloped from the sides to the floor orifice*
1895 *to encourage fish to move downstream during salvage operations conducted when a ladder is*
1896 *dewatered for maintenance.*

1897 **5.5.3.4 Turning pools**

1898 *Turning pools (i.e., pools where the fishway direction changes more than 90 degrees)*
1899 *should be at least double the length of a standard fishway pool, as measured along the centerline*
1900 *of the fishway flow path. The orientation of the upstream weir to the downstream weir must be*

1901 *such that energy from flow over the upstream weir does not affect the hydraulic conditions at the*
1902 *downstream weir.*

1903 **5.5.3.5 Pool volume**

1904 *The pool volume within the fishway must provide sufficient volume (i.e., hydraulic*
1905 *capacity) to absorb and dissipate the pool-to-pool energy and accommodate the maximum daily*
1906 *run of fish (i.e., fish capacity; Appendix H).*

1907 *Generally, the volume required to provide adequate hydraulic capacity governs pool*
1908 *sizing (Bell 1991; Bates 1992). To provide adequate hydraulic capacity, the fishway pools must*
1909 *be a minimum volume (of water) based on Equation 5-2.*

1910
$$V = \frac{(\gamma)(Q)(H)}{4 \text{ ft-lb / ft}^3/\text{s}} \quad (5-2)$$

1911 where:

- 1912 V = pool volume in ft³
1913 γ = unit of water, 64.2 lb per ft³
1914 Q = AWS flow, in ft³/s
1915 H = energy head of pool-to-pool flow, in feet

1916 *This pool volume must be provided under every expected design flow condition, with the*
1917 *entire pool volume having active flow and contributing to energy dissipation.*

1918 If large numbers of fish are expected to pass the fish ladder in a relatively short amount
1919 of time, overcrowding can occur, leading to delay. Delay in passage is minimized by providing
1920 ample volume to accommodate the peak of the run without overcrowding (Clay 1995).
1921 Therefore, it may be necessary to increase the individual pool volume to accommodate the peak
1922 run of fish. See Appendix H for sizing a fish ladder based upon run size.

1923 **5.5.3.6 Freeboard**

1924 *The freeboard of the ladder pools must be at least 3 feet at high design flow.*

1925 **5.5.3.7 Orifice dimensions**

1926 *At sites where large salmonids are expected, the minimum dimensions of the orifice*
1927 *should be 18 inches high by 15 inches wide (Bell 1991), based on the Ice Harbor ladder design*
1928 *dimensions (Section 5.5.3.3).*

1929 *The minimum dimensions of orifices should be at least 15 inches high by 12 inches wide.*

1930 *The top and sides of the orifice should be chamfered 0.75 inch on the upstream side and*
1931 *chamfered 1.5 inches on the downstream side of the orifice to provide the most stable flow*
1932 *(Bates 1992).*

1933 *For sites where Pacific lamprey are present, the floor of the fishway should provide a*
1934 *continuous, uninterrupted surface through the orifice. USACE (Portland District) has developed*
1935 *and installed an orifice with rounded edges to facilitate Pacific lamprey passage.*

1936 The primary concern with smaller orifices is the increased risk of plugging by debris
1937 (WDFW 2000).

1938 **5.5.3.8 Lighting**

1939 *Ambient lighting should be provided throughout the fishway, and abrupt lighting changes*
1940 *must be avoided (Bell 1991). In enclosed systems, such as transport tunnels, provisions for*
1941 *artificial lighting must be included. In cases where artificial lighting is required, lighting in the*
1942 *blue-green spectral range should be provided. Artificial lighting must be designed to operate*
1943 *under all environmental conditions at the installation.*

1944 These lighting criteria are based in part on laboratory studies where a majority of
1945 Chinook and sockeye salmon and steelhead entered the lighted orifice when given a choice
1946 between a dark experimental orifice and a lighted control orifice where head was equal between
1947 the two orifices (Weaver et al. 1976).

1948 **5.5.3.9 Change in flow direction**

1949 *At locations where the flow changes direction more than 60 degrees, 45-degree vertical*
1950 *miters (minimum 20 inches wide) or a 2-foot minimum, vertical radius of curvature must be*
1951 *included in the design of the outside corners of fishway pools (Bell 1991).*

1952 Bell reports that “Fish accumulate when pool hydraulic patterns are altered. If the design
1953 includes turn pools, fish will accumulate at that point. Square corners, particularly in turn pools,
1954 should be avoided as fish jump at the upwelling so created” (1991). Depending upon the pool
1955 configuration, size of the turning pool, and amount and velocity of the flow in the ladder, larger
1956 radii of curvatures may be necessary.

1957 **5.6 Counting Stations and Windows**

1958 **5.6.1 Description and Purpose**

1959 Counting stations provide a location and facility to observe and enumerate fish utilizing
1960 the fish passage facility. Although not always required, a typical counting station includes a
1961 video camera or fish counting technician, crowder, and counting window (Bell 1991). Counting
1962 stations are often included in a fish ladder design to allow fishery managers to assess fish
1963 population status, observe fish size and condition, and conduct scientific research.

1964 **5.6.1.1 Operation**

1965 *Counting stations should not interfere with the normal operation of the ladder and should*
1966 *not create excessive fish passage delay.*

1967 A decision to include a counting station as part of the ladder design should be carefully
1968 considered. Regardless of how well the counting station is designed, oftentimes fish hold and
1969 delay at counting stations because of conditions that change the facility such as crowding,
1970 lighting, and hydraulics. Instead of a counting station, other means of enumeration may be
1971 acceptable, including the use of submerged cameras and their associated lighting, adult PIT-tag
1972 detectors, orifice counting tubes, and VAKI products.

1973 **5.6.2 Specific Criteria and Guidelines – Counting Stations**

1974 **5.6.2.1 Location**

1975 *Counting stations must be located in a hydraulically stable, low velocity (i.e., around*
1976 *1.5 ft/s), and accessible area of the upstream passage facility.*

1977 **5.6.2.2 Downstream and upstream pools**

1978 *The pool downstream of the counting station must extend at least two standard fishway*
1979 *pool lengths from the downstream end of the picket leads. The pool upstream of the counting*
1980 *station must extend at least one standard fishway pool length from the upstream end of the picket*
1981 *leads. Both pools must be straight and in line with the counting station (Bell 1991).*

1982 **5.6.3 Specific Criteria and Guidelines – Counting Windows**

1983 **5.6.3.1 Design and material**

1984 *The counting window must be designed such that cleaning of the window can be*
1985 *accomplished completely, conveniently, and at a frequency that ensures window visibility will be*
1986 *maintained and accurate counting can be accomplished. The counting window material must be*
1987 *abrasion-resistant to accommodate frequent cleaning.*

1988 **5.6.3.2 Orientation**

1989 *Counting windows must be vertically oriented.*

1990 **5.6.3.3 Sill**

1991 *The counting window sill should be positioned to allow full viewing of the fish passage*
1992 *slot (from floor to water surface).*

1993 **5.6.3.4 Lighting**

1994 *The counting window design must include sufficient indirect, artificial lighting to provide*
1995 *satisfactory fish identification at all hours of operation and without causing passage delay.*

1996 **5.6.3.5 Dimensions**

1997 *The minimum observable length of the counting window in the upstream-to-downstream*
1998 *flow direction must be 5 feet, and the minimum height (depth) should be full water depth.*

1999 **5.6.3.6 Counting window slot width**

2000 *The width of the counting station slot (the area between the counting window and the*
2001 *vertical surface at the back of the slot) must be at least 18 inches. The design must include an*
2002 *adjustable crowder to move fish closer to the counting window (but not closer than 18 inches) to*
2003 *allow fish counting under turbid water conditions. The counting window slot width should be*
2004 *maximized as water clarity allows and when not actively counting fish.*

2005 **5.6.3.7 Picket lead**

2006 *A downstream picket lead must be included in the design to guide fish into the counting*
2007 *window slot, and it must be oriented at a deflection angle of 45 degrees relative to the direction*
2008 *of fishway flow. An upstream picket lead oriented at a deflection angle of 45 degrees to the flow*
2009 *direction must also be provided. Picket orientation, picket clearance, and maximum allowable*
2010 *velocity must conform to specifications for diffusers (see Section 5.3.7).*

2011 *Combined maximum head differential through both sets of pickets must be less than*
2012 *0.3 foot. Both upstream and downstream picket leads must be equipped with witness marks to*
2013 *verify correct position when picket leads are installed in the fishway. A 1-foot-square opening*
2014 *should be provided in the upstream picket lead to allow smaller fish that pass through the*
2015 *downstream picket lead to escape the area between the two picket leads.*

2016 Picket leads may comprise flat stock bars oriented parallel to flow or other cross-
2017 sectional shapes, if approved by NMFS.

2018 **5.6.3.8 Transition ramps**

2019 *If the counting window requires a false floor to force fish to swim higher in the water*
2020 *column to be more easily identified, then transition ramps must be included in a counting station*
2021 *design. The ramps must smoothly transition from the floor of the counting station pool to the*
2022 *false floor at the counting window and then back to the counting station floor.*

2023 These ramps provide gradual transitions between walls, floors, and the false floor in the
2024 counting window slot. The purpose is to minimize flow separations created by head loss that
2025 may impede fish passage and induce fallback behavior at the counting window. In situations
2026 where space is available, the transitions should be more gradual than 1:8, and where space is
2027 confined, a 1:4 transition should be used.

2028 **5.6.3.9 Water surface through the counting slot**

2029 *A free water surface must exist over the length of the counting window.*

2030 **5.7 Fishway Exit Control**

2031 **5.7.1 Description and Purpose**

2032 Section 5.7.1 describes and provides criteria for a ladder exit control channel for fish to
2033 egress the fishway and enter the forebay of a dam to continue upstream migration. The exit

2034 control channel may include the following features: add-in auxiliary water valves and diffusers,
2035 exit pools with varied flow, exit channels, a coarse trash rack that keeps large debris out of the
2036 ladder but allows fish to pass through the trash rack and exit the ladder, and fine trash racks and
2037 control gates on AWS systems. The exit control section of the ladder also attenuates fluctuations
2038 in forebay water surface elevation, thus maintaining hydraulic conditions suitable for fish
2039 passage in the ladder pools. Other functions that should be incorporated into the design of the
2040 exit control section include minimizing the entrainment of debris and sediment into the fish
2041 ladder. Different types of ladder designs (Section 5.5) require specific fish ladder exit design
2042 details unique to each type of ladder.

2043 **5.7.2 Specific Criteria and Guidelines – Fishway Exit Control**

2044 **5.7.2.1 Hydraulic drop**

2045 *The exit control section hydraulic drop per pool should range from 0.25 to 1 foot.*

2046 **5.7.2.2 Length**

2047 *The length of the exit channel upstream of the exit control section should be a minimum*
2048 *of two standard ladder pools.*

2049 **5.7.2.3 Design requirements**

2050 *Exit section design must utilize the requirements for AWS diffusers, channel geometry,*
2051 *and energy dissipation as specified in Sections 5.3, 5.4, and 5.5.*

2052 **5.7.2.4 Closure gates**

2053 *Any closure gate that is incorporated into the exit control section must be operated either*
2054 *in the fully opened or closed position (i.e., the gates cannot be partially open to regulate flow).*

2055 **5.7.2.5 Location**

2056 *In most cases, the ladder exit should be located along a shoreline, in a velocity zone of*
2057 *less than 4 ft/s, and sufficiently far enough upstream of a spillway, sluiceway, or powerhouse to*
2058 *minimize the risk of fish non-volitionally falling back through these routes (Clay 1995).*

2059 The distance the exit needs to be upstream of these hazards depends on bathymetry near
2060 the dam spillway or crest and associated longitudinal river velocities (Bell 1991).

2061 **5.7.2.6 Public access**

2062 *Public access near the ladder exit should be prohibited.*

2063

5.8 Fishway Exit Sediment and Debris Management

2064

5.8.1 Description and Purpose

2065 As stated in Section 5.7.1, the design of the ladder exit should strive to minimize the
2066 entrainment of debris and sediment into the fish ladder. Floating and submerged debris can
2067 become lodged in ladder orifices or on weir crests, alter hydraulic conditions in these fish
2068 passage routes, and impact fish behavior and passage rates. Similarly, sediment transported into
2069 the fishway can deposit in low-velocity areas, alter hydraulic conditions, and impact fish
2070 passage. Removing debris and sediment from ladders can be difficult and costly. Therefore,
2071 preventing debris and sediment from entering the ladder from the forebay should be a goal of the
2072 ladder exit design.

5.8.1.1 Coarse trash rack

2074 *For large facilities where maintenance is frequently required and provided, coarse trash*
2075 *racks should be included at the fishway exit to minimize the entrainment of debris into the*
2076 *fishway (Figure 5-9; Bell 1991).*

2077

5.8.2 Specific Criteria and Guidelines – Coarse Trash Rack

5.8.2.1 Velocity

2079 *The velocity through the gross area of a clean coarse trash rack should be less than*
2080 *1.5 ft/s to reduce debris accumulation and thus facilitate cleaning of the racks regularly*
2081 *(Bates 1992).*

2082 Bell (1991) indicated there is no evidence of fish refusing to pass through trash racks at
2083 velocities normal to the trash rack of 2 ft/s or less.

5.8.2.2 Depth

2085 *The depth of flow through a coarse trash rack should be equal to the pool depth in the*
2086 *ladder exit channel.*

5.8.2.3 Maintenance

2088 *The coarse trash rack should be installed at 1:5 slope (or flatter) for ease of cleaning*
2089 *(Bates 1992). The coarse trash rack design must allow for easy maintenance and provide access*
2090 *for personnel, travel clearances for manual or automated trash raking, and the removal of*
2091 *debris.*

5.8.2.4 Bar spacing

2093 *The coarse trash rack on the ladder exit should have a minimum clear space between*
2094 *vertical flat bars of 10 inches if Chinook salmon are present, and 8 inches for all other species*
2095 *and instances. Lateral support bar spacing must be a minimum of 24 inches and must be*
2096 *sufficiently set back from the face of the coarse trash rack to allow trash rake tines to fully*

2097 *penetrate the rack for effective debris removal. Coarse trash racks must extend to the*
2098 *appropriate elevation above water to allow debris raked from the trash racks to be easily*
2099 *removed.*

2100 Bell (1991) recommends that the clear openings of a trash rack be adapted to the width of
2101 the largest fish to be passed, which is usually 12 inches for large salmon. Figure 5-12 shows an
2102 example of a sloping coarse trash rack on the exit channel of a small fishway.



2103
2104 Figure 5-12. Sloping coarse trash rack on a fishway exit channel

2105 **5.8.2.5 Orientation**

2106 *The fishway exit coarse trash rack must be oriented at a deflection angle greater than*
2107 *45 degrees relative to the direction of river flow.*

2108 **5.8.3 Specific Criteria and Guidelines – Debris and Sediment**

2109 **5.8.3.1 Coarse floating debris**

2110 *Debris booms, curtain walls, or other provisions must be included in the design of a*
2111 *fishway if coarse floating debris is expected.*

2112 **5.8.3.2 Debris accumulation**

2113 *If debris accumulation is expected to be high, the fishway design should include an*
2114 *automated mechanical debris removal system. If debris accumulation potential is unknown, the*

2115 *design should anticipate the need for debris removal in the future and include features to allow*
2116 *an automated mechanical debris removal system to be retrofitted to the design.*

2117 **5.8.3.3 Sediment entrainment and accumulation**

2118 *The fishway exit should be designed to minimize sediment entrainment into the fishway*
2119 *and sediment and debris accumulation at the exit under normal operations.*

2120 **5.9 Baffled Chute Fishways**

2121 **5.9.1 Description and Purpose**

2122 Section 5.9.1 discusses the baffled chute, which is another general type of fish passage
2123 system. It consists of a hydraulically roughened flume that has nearly continuous energy
2124 dissipation throughout its length.

2125 **5.9.2 Specific Criteria and Guidelines – Baffled Chutes**

2126 The baffled chute fishway utilizes a relatively steep, narrow flume with internal
2127 roughness elements that generate lower water velocities that allow the fish to swim through the
2128 fishway. Denil and ASP fishways are examples of roughened chute fishways that share a similar
2129 design philosophy. Baffled chute fishways are designed to operate with less flow and at steeper
2130 slopes than traditional ladders.

2131 **5.9.2.1 Uses**

2132 *Denil and ASP fishways should not be used as the primary route of passage at permanent*
2133 *fishway installations in the WCR.*

2134 Baffle chute fishways are not considered a substitute for a permanent style of ladder (e.g.,
2135 a pool and weir ladder) because of their tendency to collect debris and their limited operating
2136 range. Denil and ASP fishways are primarily used at sites where the fishway can be closely
2137 monitored and inspected daily. This includes off-ladder fish traps, temporary fishways used
2138 during construction of permanent passage facilities, and fishways operated temporarily each year
2139 to collect hatchery broodstock. Baffle chute fishways should not be used at locations or in
2140 situations where the downstream passage of adults or juvenile salmonids occurs.

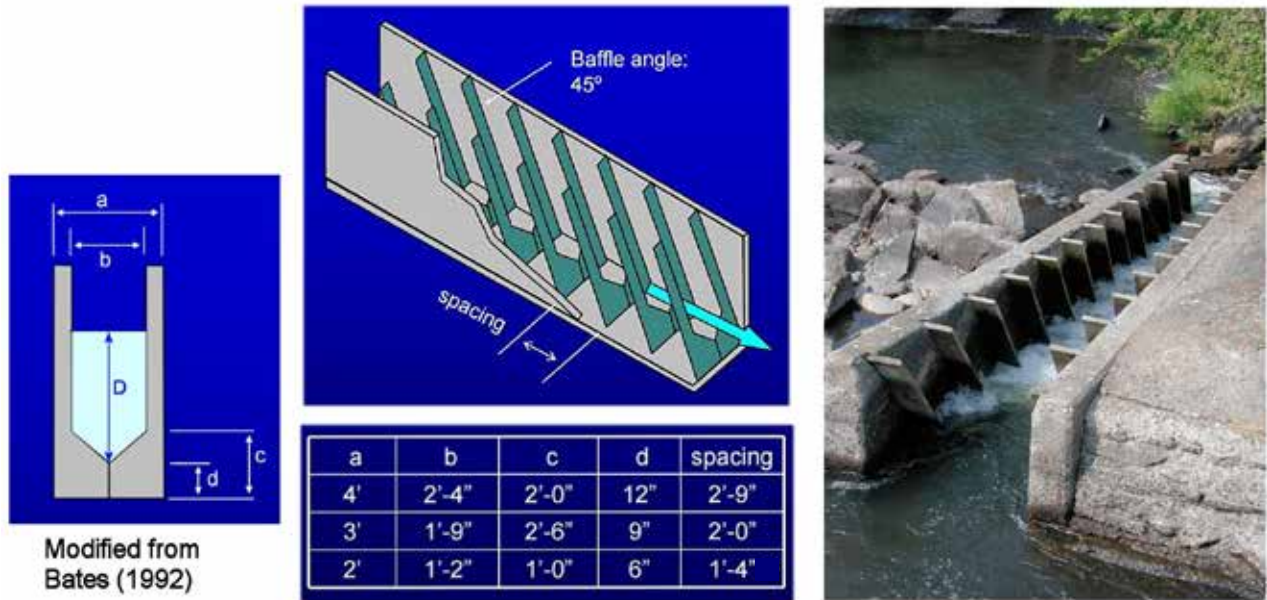
2141 **5.9.2.2 Debris**

2142 *Denil and ASP fishways must not be used in areas where even minor amounts of debris*
2143 *are expected (Bell 1991).*

2144 Debris accumulation in any fishway, in combination with turbulent flow, may injure fish
2145 or render the fishway impassable. Because of their internal baffle geometry and narrow flow
2146 paths, baffle chute fishways are especially susceptible to debris accumulation, creating a
2147 blockage to passage.

2148 **5.9.2.3 Design**

2149 Denil and ASP fishways are designed with a sloped channel that has a constant discharge
 2150 for a given normal depth, chute gradient, and baffle configuration (Figure 5-13). Energy is
 2151 dissipated consistently throughout the length of the fishway via channel roughness and results in
 2152 an average velocity compatible with the swimming ability of adult salmonids. The passage
 2153 corridor consists of a chute flow between and through the baffles. A wide range of flows are
 2154 possible for Denil fishways depending on fishway size, slope, and water depth (Bates 1992).



2155
 2156 Figure 5-13. Drawings, dimensions, and a photo of a Denil fishway

2157 **5.9.2.3.1 Specific design information – Denil fishways**

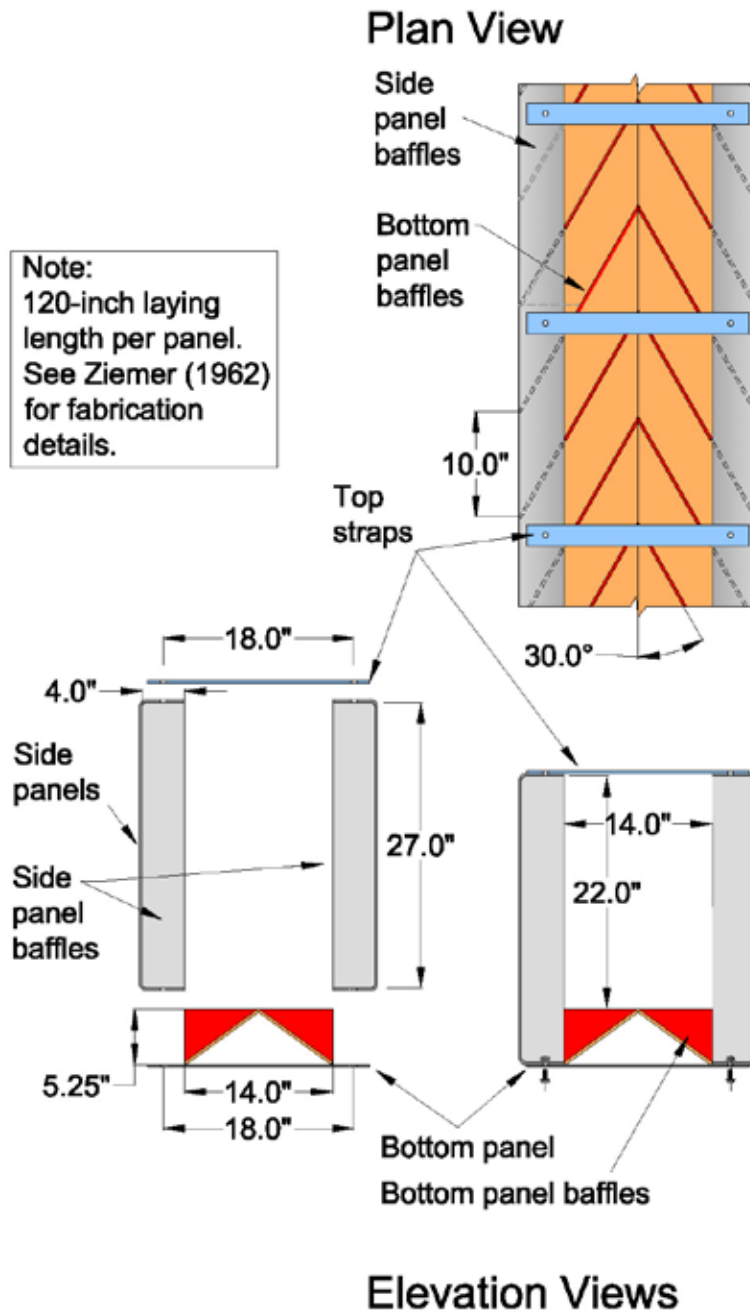
2158 The standard dimensions shown in Figure 5-13 and the following design information for
 2159 Denil fishways is taken from Bates (1992):

- 2160 · *NMFS recommends a maximum slope of 20%.*
 - 2161 – The normal slope for a Denil-style fishway is 17% (Bell 1991), though they have been
 - 2162 used at slopes up to 25% (Bates 1992).
- 2163 · *Discharge through Denil fishways can be calculated using Equation 5-3 (Bates 1992).*

2164
$$Q = 5.73D^2\sqrt{bS} \tag{5-3}$$

2165 where:

- 2166 Q = AWS flow, in ft³/s
- 2167 D = depth (feet) of flow above the vee baffle
- 2168 b = clear opening in the baffle (feet)
- 2169 S = slope (feet/feet)



2221

2222 Figure 5-15. Plan and elevation views of a typical ASP fishway

2223 **5.9.2.3.3** *Special considerations for Denil and Alaska steppass fishways*

2224 The following unique aspects of Denil or ASP fishways must be carefully considered:
2225 intermediate resting pools, minimum resting pool volume, and exit locations.

- 2226 • Intermediate resting pools:

2227 *If the Denil or ASP fishway is long, intermediate resting pools must be included in the*
 2228 *design. Resting pools (where water velocities are less than 1 ft/s) should be provided for Denil*
 2229 *fishways longer than 30 feet in length (Bell 1991); resting pool size should be based on minimum*
 2230 *pool size or EDF (energy dissipation factor) calculations. These guidelines also apply to ASP*
 2231 *fishways longer than 30 feet in length.*

2232 Typically, there are no resting locations within a given length of Denil or ASP fishway.
 2233 Once a fish starts to ascend a length of an ASP or Denil fishway, it must pass all the way
 2234 upstream and exit the fishway or risk injury when falling back downstream. Therefore, if the
 2235 Denil or ASP fishway is long, intermediate resting pools must be included in the design. Clay
 2236 (1995) recommends that resting pools be provided for every 12 feet of height ascended and that
 2237 average velocity in the resting pool should not exceed 1 ft/s. NMFS recommends that the
 2238 designer size the resting pool based on the minimum pool size necessary to achieve either an
 2239 average velocity of 1 ft/s or an adequate pool size based on the expected run size, if known
 2240 (Appendix H), or on the EDF formula for pool volume (Equation 5-5), whichever is larger.

2241 • Minimum resting pool volume:

2242 *The minimum volume of the resting pool is calculated as shown in Equation 5-5, which is*
 2243 *similar to Equation 5-2 in Section 5.5.3.5 except that the volume required is increased by a*
 2244 *factor of 2 since this equation is for a resting pool.*

2245
$$V = (\gamma)(Q) \left(\frac{v^2}{2g} \right) / \left(2ft \frac{lbs}{s} \right) / ft^3 \quad (5-5)$$

2246 where:

- 2247 V = 5, in ft^3
 2248 γ = unit weight of water, 62.4 lb per ft^3
 2249 Q = Denil or ASP flow, in ft^3/s
 2250 v = velocity of pool-to-pool flow, in ft/s
 2251 g = gravitational acceleration ($32.2 ft/s^2$)

2252 Blackett (1987) conducted experimental modifications to an ASP fishway at a 10-meter-
 2253 high falls to improve sockeye salmon entry and passage. Sockeye salmon passage was
 2254 equivalent between an ASP fishway of approximately 200 feet in length with no resting pools
 2255 and an adjoining ASP fishway where three resting pools were incorporated into the design—
 2256 although significant year-to-year differences in passage occurred amongst each ASP fishway.
 2257 However, resting pools were beneficial for holding slower or descending salmon without
 2258 blocking the passage of other salmon. Also, sockeye salmon passage was greater in the original
 2259 ASP fishway with three resting pools than in another ASP fishway tested that contained a single
 2260 resting pool.

2261 • Exit locations:

2262 *Denil and ASP fishway exits must be located to minimize the potential for fish to fallback*
 2263 *over the barrier.*

2264

5.10 Nature-Like Fishways

2265 The nature-like fishway (NLF)—as opposed to technical fishway designs discussed in
2266 Section 5.5—is characterized by its use of natural materials, such as rocks and boulders, and
2267 incorporation of natural riverine characteristics in its construction and design (Katopodis et al.
2268 2001; Wildman et al. 2003). There are two main classes of NLFs: bifurcated and channel
2269 spanning.

2270 Bifurcated NLFs are designed to circumnavigate an obstacle, splitting the streamflow
2271 between the NLF and a water-control structure (e.g., powerhouses, spillways, or natural barriers).
2272 Discharge and attraction flow for fishways in bifurcated channels often requires a high degree of
2273 hydraulic control, unlike channel-spanning designs. Because of the similarities between NLFs in
2274 bifurcated channels and technical fishways, NLF fishway designs in bifurcated channels are
2275 addressed in Chapter 5.

2276 Channel-spanning designs convey the entire natural flow regime and must also facilitate
2277 natural stream characteristics and processes such as floodplain connectivity and sediment
2278 transport (bifurcated designs do not require these design elements). Channel-spanning NLFs are
2279 discussed in Chapter 9 because they are mostly utilized for retrofitting water-control structures
2280 and grade control.

2281 An NLF design is based on the assumption that by simulating the hydraulic conditions of
2282 natural channels, natural passage windows and migration timing for target fish species (that have
2283 evolved in similar hydraulic conditions) can be maintained. The design objective of NLFs is to
2284 provide natural hydraulic conditions for target species by mimicking the geomorphic form and
2285 complexity found in natural channels the species inhabit.

2286 The NLF is thought to facilitate the passage of a wide assemblage of fish and aquatic
2287 species. However, Castro-Santos (2011) concluded that NLF designs evaluated in his study were
2288 not superior to technical fishways for the 23 fish species from the northeastern United States that
2289 were evaluated. More recently, Landsman et al. (2018) compared the passage of salmonid and
2290 non-salmonid species at NLF and pool-and-weir fishways in eastern Canada and reported similar
2291 results.

2292 The NLF design has the potential to pass a more diverse assemblage of species over some
2293 technical fishways. In certain settings, NLFs may facilitate the function of critical natural stream
2294 processes to varying degrees.

2295 Bifurcated NLFs provide variability in fishway use and passage efficiencies for target
2296 species, which suggests that fish behavior and habitat in the NLF play a critical role in NLF
2297 performance. Fishway entrance location, attraction conditions, competing hydraulics in the
2298 tailrace, flow regulation of the fishway, and powerhouse or spill operations, where applicable,
2299 are critical to ensuring successful fish passage at bifurcated projects. Bifurcated NLFs have been
2300 observed to pass anadromous and resident salmonids with varying degrees of success at projects
2301 of varying hydraulic complexity (Aarestrup et al. 2003; Calles and Greenberg 2005, 2009; Dodd
2302 et al. 2017).

2303 At the project-scale, design variables related to bifurcated NLFs are nearly synonymous
2304 with technical fishway design, the main difference being that NLFs are constructed using natural
2305 materials, not concrete. Like technical fishways, if any of the design variables between the
2306 tailrace and the forebay are improperly designed, the result may be adverse passage effects to the
2307 NLF project. All project-scale passage variables must be properly analyzed, accounted for, and
2308 work together to provide safe, timely, and effective upstream passage for salmonids and other
2309 target species.

2310 Channel size may also affect fish passage use of NLFs and passage efficiency. In smaller
2311 systems, confined tailwater conditions increase the ability for fish to find the fishway entrance.
2312 Using results of NLFs installed in smaller channels may not be a good predictor of NLF
2313 effectiveness in larger channels where fishway entrance location and attraction flow become
2314 more critical to fishway performance. NMFS cautions that design methods producing successful
2315 passage results at smaller scales are no guarantee those same methods will produce successful
2316 results at larger scales, and vice versa.

2317 **5.10.1 Experimental Fishways**

2318 Nature-like concepts and methods are more frequently used in conjunction with
2319 traditional fishway designs, creating a class of hybrid fishways. Many of the passage
2320 assumptions and anticipated hydraulic conditions associated with nature-like and technical
2321 fishways do not hold, or are hard to predict, when combining these design approaches. In many
2322 instances, these hybrid designs are classified by NMFS as experimental. Experimental designs
2323 are addressed in Section 1.5 and must be vetted using the guidelines contained in Appendix C.

2324 Since NLFs simulate passage conditions of a natural channel, numerous designs can be
2325 developed that meet the passage requirements of the target species. The methods and
2326 approaches make recommending a universal design approach challenging. The following
2327 guidelines will help designers better understand critical components of NLF design, regardless of
2328 the engineering methods and approaches implemented.

2329 Many NLF designs simulate the form and roughness of a reference reach selected as a
2330 design template from a natural channel, while other designs rely on hydraulic analysis and
2331 physical modeling; however, some designs incorporate nature-like simulation, hydraulic
2332 analysis, and physical modeling into NLF configurations. The following sources provide
2333 additional information on the hydraulic and geomorphic concepts and potential design methods
2334 used in bifurcated NLF designs: Acharya et al. 2000; Keils et al. 2000; Katopodis et al. 2001;
2335 Courtice et al. 2016.

2336 **5.10.2 Criteria**

2337 **5.10.2.1 Hydraulics**

2338 Although NLF designs simulate natural channels, hydraulic analysis of passage and
2339 structural components of NLFs is required. Design aspects of geomorphic form and function,
2340 structure stability, and passage conditions must be supported by hydraulic modeling. Modeling
2341 efforts must show support for the following criteria:

- 2342 · *Modeled maximum average channel velocity at the high design flow should be 4 ft/s,*
- 2343 *regardless of channel slope. Channel roughness must therefore be carefully engineered to*
- 2344 *ensure this criterion is not exceeded. This approach simultaneously ensures EDF values stay*
- 2345 *consistent with those found in nature at similar slopes (Barnard 2013).*
- 2346 · *If drop structures are used in the fishway, minimum pool depth is 4 feet in the receiving pool*
- 2347 *of each drop structure.*
- 2348 · *The fishway must include at least one passage route that maintains a minimum channel depth*
- 2349 *of 3 feet. This criterion does not apply at drop structure crests.*
- 2350 · *Maximum hydraulic drop is 1 foot for adult salmonids and 0.5 foot for juvenile salmonids.*
- 2351 · *Maximum fishway slope is 5% for all salmonid species except chum salmon. Maximum*
- 2352 *fishway slope for chum salmon passage is 3%.*

2353 **5.10.2.2 Channel stability**

2354 *Beds and banks are designed to be immobile at all anticipated fishway discharges.*

2355 **5.10.2.3 Channel roughness**

2356 *Simulated or modeled roughness values must be physically expressed in the actual*

2357 *roughness of the channel design.*

2358 **5.10.2.4 Technical components**

2359 The technical components of bifurcated NLF designs are similar to traditional fishway

2360 designs, including the following:

- 2361 · At water-control structures and similar barriers, bifurcated designs may require headworks or
- 2362 other hydraulic controls to regulate and manage flow through the fishway, hydraulic control
- 2363 and management of fishway entrance conditions, and AWS.
- 2364 · The NLS must be designed to operate and attract fish over variable tailwater conditions.
- 2365 · The NLF entrance and exit flow control structures—which manage fishway flow and
- 2366 attraction conditions—are engineered using the same design considerations and methods as
- 2367 traditional fishway designs.
- 2368 · The civil works associated with bifurcated NLF designs share many similarities with
- 2369 technical fishways; guidelines relative to following sections also may apply to bifurcated
- 2370 designs:
 - 2371 – Section 5.2, Fishway Entrance
 - 2372 – Section 5.3, Auxiliary Water Systems
 - 2373 – Section 5.6, Counting Stations
 - 2374 – Section 5.7, Fishway Exit Control
 - 2375 – Section 5.8, Fishway Exist Sediment and Debris Management
 - 2376 – Section 5.11, Miscellaneous Considerations

2377 **5.10.3 Monitoring and Maintenance**

2378 *An annual monitoring and maintenance plan is required. The number of annual*

2379 *monitoring and maintenance plans needed will be determined in consultation with NMFS. The*

2380 *plans must address how morphology and fish passage hydraulics will be monitored and*
2381 *modified, as needed, by developing an adaptive management approach that identifies triggers for*
2382 *when additional actions are to be implemented that address changes in NLF channel*
2383 *morphology and hydraulic conditions.*

2384 **5.10.3.1 Passage assessment**

2385 *Depending on project-specific considerations, monitoring may include an assessment of*
2386 *passage efficiency via fish tagging or fish counts. This monitoring criterion will be identified by*
2387 *NMFS on a project-by-project basis.*

2388 **5.10.3.2 Channel stability**

2389 *The loss or displacement of bed and bank material after a high-flow event does not*
2390 *necessarily equate with a failure of the NLF to maintain passage conditions. Any resulting loss*
2391 *or displacement of bed and bank material will be evaluated by NMFS as part of the monitoring*
2392 *and maintenance plan. Needed repairs will be identified by NMFS and implemented by the*
2393 *facility owner.*

2394 **5.10.3.3 Channel velocity**

2395 *Channel velocity will be verified through monitoring. When average channel velocity*
2396 *exceeds 6 ft/s at the high fish passage design flow, NMFS will evaluate the passage conditions of*
2397 *the fishway. Needed repairs or adaptive management actions will be identified by NMFS and*
2398 *implemented by the facility owner.*

2399 **5.11 Miscellaneous Considerations**

2400 **5.11.1 Security**

2401 *Fishway facilities and areas should be secured to discourage vandalism, preclude*
2402 *poaching opportunity, and provide for public safety.*

2403 *Security fencing around the facility and grating over the fishway may be required.*

2404 **5.11.2 Access**

2405 *Access for personnel to all areas of the fishway must be provided to facilitate operational*
2406 *and maintenance requirements. Walkway grating should allow as much ambient lighting into*
2407 *the fishway as possible. Consideration should be given to providing access for personnel to each*
2408 *pool of the ladder to support fish salvage operations.*

2409 **5.11.3 Edge and Surface Finishes**

2410 *All metal edges in the flow path used for fish migration must be ground smooth to*
2411 *minimize risk of lacerations. Concrete surfaces must be finished to ensure smooth surfaces, with*
2412 *1-inch-wide, 45-degree corner chamfers.*

2413

5.11.4 Protrusions

2414 *Protrusions that fish could contact, such as valve stems, bolts, gate operators, pipe*
2415 *flanges, and permanent ladders rungs, must not extend into the flow path of the fishway.*

2416

5.11.5 Exposed Control Gates

2417 *All control gates exposed to fish (e.g., entrances in the fully open position) must have a*
2418 *shroud or be recessed to minimize or eliminate fish contact.*

2419

5.11.6 Maintenance Activities

2420 *To ensure fish safety during in-season fishway maintenance activities, all fish ladders*
2421 *must be designed to provide a safe egress route or safe holding areas for fish prior to any*
2422 *temporary (i.e., less than 24 hours) dewatering. Longer periods of fishway dewatering for*
2423 *scheduled ladder maintenance must occur outside of the passage season and with procedures in*
2424 *place that allow fish to be evacuated in a safe manner.*

2425

5.12 O&M Considerations

2426

5.12.1 Activity Near the Ladder

2427 *There should be no construction or heavy activity within 100 feet of a ladder entrance or*
2428 *exit or within 50 feet of the ladder.*

2429

5.12.2 Maximum Outage Period

2430 *A fishway must never be inoperable due to mechanical or operational issues for more*
2431 *than 48 hours during the fish passage season of any anadromous species.*

2432

6 Exclusion Barriers

2433

6.1 Introduction

2434

Upstream-migrating salmonids are often attracted to areas of a river where flow is concentrated or velocities are high such as the discharge from a hydroelectric powerhouse. This behavior may cause fish to attempt to ascend a barrier at locations where passage is poor or blocked, which could result in the following:

2435

2436

2437

2438

- Injuries (e.g., lacerations, abrasions) caused by

2439

- Brushing against rocks or structures while swimming in turbulent areas

2440

- Jumping and striking rocks or structural projections

2441

- Direct or delayed mortality due to injuries

2442

- Migration delays

2443

Exclusion barriers are structures or devices that are designed and used to halt the upstream migration of fish (BOR 2006). These barriers can guide fish to an area where upstream migration is allowed or to holding, sorting, evaluation, and transportation facilities. They are also used to prevent fish from entering an area where no upstream egress or suitable spawning habitat exists. For example, exclusion barriers could be required to protect upstream-migrating salmon and steelhead from injuries or mortality caused by ascending powerhouse turbine draft tubes or tunnels. Exclusion barriers can also be used for the following:

2444

2445

2446

2447

2448

2449

2450

- Preventing fish from entering return flow from an irrigation ditch; tailrace of a power plant; channels subject to sudden flow changes; and channels with poor spawning gravels, poor water quality, or insufficient water quantity

2451

2452

2453

- Guiding fish to counting facilities as well as trap facilities for upstream transport, research, or broodstock collection

2454

2455

6.1.1 Fish Safety

2456

Exclusion barriers must be designed to minimize the potential for injury and mortality to fish and migration delays.

2457

2458

Fish may be physically injured (e.g., lacerations, abrasions) when attempting to pass exclusion barriers in migration pathways (FERC 1995). Therefore, barrier design and operation should consider and eliminate sources of injury due to shallow depths, exposed components, and rough surfaces. Barriers that are poorly designed can cause fish to delay while undertaking multiple attempts to pass the barrier.

2459

2460

2461

2462

2463

6.1.2 Barriers Used to Collect Information

2464 *Installing exclusion barriers solely for the purpose of collecting information needed for*
2465 *fisheries management will be discouraged, especially if ESA-listed fish are present in the*
2466 *watershed.*

2467

6.1.3 Other Species

2468 *Installing an exclusion barrier in river systems with multiple species of migratory fish*
2469 *must be carefully considered because some designs may inadvertently block the upstream and*
2470 *downstream movement of non-target species.*

2471 Conversely, exclusion barriers may also be used to restrict the movement of undesirable
2472 species into upstream habitat (Clay 1995) such as sea lamprey in the Great Lakes (McLaughlin et
2473 al. 2007).

2474

6.1.4 Flow Range

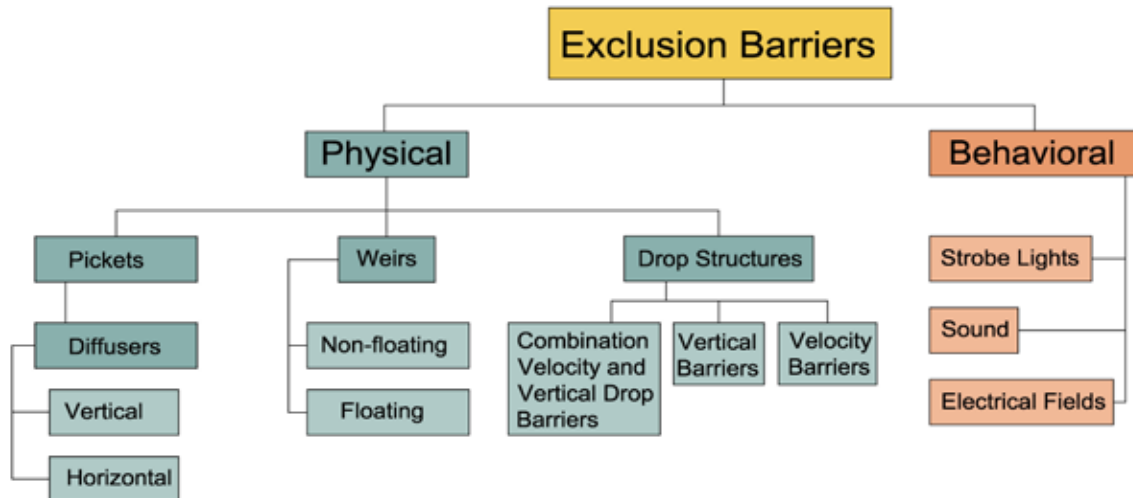
2475 *All barriers must be designed to function over the expected design range of flow*
2476 *conditions for the site when target fish are present (BOR 2006).*

2477

6.2 Types of Exclusion Barriers

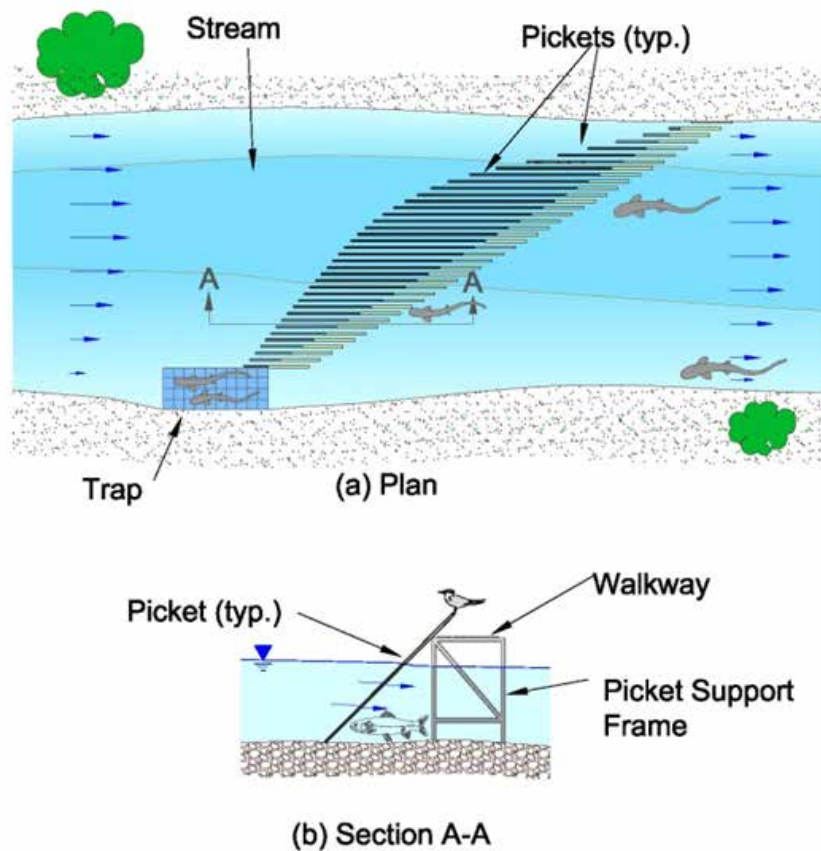
2478 Barriers to upstream fish passage are either physical or behavioral (e.g., acoustic,
2479 chemical, thermal, or lighting). They can be natural or fabricated. Natural barriers consist
2480 mainly of waterfalls and debris jams, whereas fabricated barriers consist mainly of dams,
2481 culverts, and log jams (Powers and Orsborn 1985). This chapter focuses on fabricated physical
2482 barriers, which present fish with structures or conditions that block farther upstream migration.

2483 Fabricated physical barriers are classified into three categories: diffusers, weirs, and drop
2484 structures (Figure 6-1). Picket and weir barriers rely on bars racks, pickets, porous rigid panels,
2485 screens, or fences to physically exclude fish from entering an area. Fixed bar racks and picket
2486 barriers have similar meanings and purposes, and fish passage designers often use these terms
2487 interchangeably. However, the term ‘picket barrier’ carries an added nuance—these barrier
2488 panels tend to guide fish in some preferred direction—in addition to blocking farther upstream
2489 passage. Figure 6-2 is a schematic illustration of a temporary fish weir that uses pickets to guide
2490 fish to a trap at the riverbank.



2491

2492 Figure 6-1. Classifications of exclusion barriers



2493

2494 Figure 6-2. Fish weir constructed with pickets in plan (a) and section (b) views

2495 Advantages of pickets and weir barriers include the following:

- 2496 · They induce a small loss of head under clean and partially plugged conditions.
- 2497 · They can function over a wide range of river flow stages.
- 2498 · They can be designed to be removable.

2499 Disadvantages of pickets and weir barriers include the following:

- 2500 · Bar spacing that is too wide will not function effectively as a barrier, and bar spacing that is
2501 too narrow can collect debris more quickly than it can be removed. Striking a balance
2502 between the competing design objectives of excluding fish while not collecting more debris
2503 than can be managed may be difficult or impossible, depending on the river system and target
2504 fish species being excluded.
- 2505 · Downstream juvenile and adult fish that need to pass the barrier can be excessively delayed
2506 and, in some designs, injured or killed. It is important to recognize that this type of barrier
2507 can cause injury and mortality to downstream migrants.
- 2508 · Barrier components require periodic cleaning and are subject to rapid plugging (BOR 2006).

2509 Drop structure barriers involve a combination of local hydraulic conditions downstream
2510 of a barrier and the swimming capabilities of the species and life stage to block migration
2511 (Powers and Orsborn 1985). They create hydraulic conditions that exceed the swimming or
2512 leaping capabilities of the fish to overcome the hydraulic condition. Examples include velocity
2513 barriers, vertical drop barriers, and velocity drop barriers. Hydraulic conditions at a specific site
2514 function as a barrier when one or more of the following conditions are present:

- 2515 · Water velocity downstream from a barrier exceeds the swimming speed of fish.
- 2516 · A standing wave develops downstream of the barrier that fish cannot pass through, or it
2517 forms too far downstream to allow the fish to rest before bursting upstream.
- 2518 · A downstream plunge pool is too shallow to allow fish to jump the barrier.
- 2519 · Barrier height exceeds jumping ability of fish.

2520 Advantages of drop structure barriers include the following:

- 2521 · These have lower maintenance requirements compared to picket and weir barriers.
- 2522 · Debris passes over the barrier with flow (instead of plugging the barrier, which can be the
2523 case with structural barriers).
- 2524 · All species and life stages of fish whose swimming capabilities are weaker than the species
2525 the barrier was designed to address are excluded.
- 2526 · The passage of downstream migrants over drop barriers is usually safer than through picket
2527 and weir barriers.

2528 Disadvantages of drop structure barriers include the following:

- 2529 · They require a significant head to function properly.
- 2530 · Their performance depends on maintaining a minimum head differential across the barrier.
- 2531 · The pool upstream of the barrier structure may increase sediment deposition, which reduces
2532 channel capacity (BOR 2006).

2533 Several reports contain additional information on the topic of exclusion barriers and fish
2534 swimming performance. Bell (1991) provides information on the swimming and jumping
2535 capabilities of various salmonid species. Powers and Orsborn (1985) provide equations for
2536 calculating maximum swim distances and estimating leap height and distance. Katopodis (1992)
2537 provides endurance curves for fish of various lengths for the two main modes of fish locomotion
2538 and a formula for calculating swimming distance. The two main modes of locomotion are

2539 anguilliform body shapes (e.g., lamprey and Burbot) and subcarangiform body shapes (e.g.,
2540 anadromous salmonids and various freshwater species such as bass, suckers, and chub).

2541 **6.3 Picket and Weir Barriers**

2542 Physical barriers typically rely on a combination of low-velocity flow discharged through
2543 bar racks, pickets, diffusers, screens, or fences to physically block fish from entering an area.
2544 Picket and weir barriers include fixed bar racks, picket panels (Figure 6-3), diffusers (a
2545 specialized form of picket barrier usually used in AWS in fishways), horizontal outlet diffusers,
2546 and a variety of hinged, floating weir designs and framework-supported (rigid) weir designs.
2547 The clear opening between bars in bar rack panels or pickets in picket panels must be sufficiently
2548 narrow to create a barrier to the smallest-sized migrant fish being excluded from farther passage
2549 upstream. Depending on the design and site conditions, weir barriers may need to be removed
2550 during high-flow events to prevent structural damage, which potentially reduces the barrier’s
2551 ability to prevent target fish from passing into undesirable areas.



2552
2553 Figure 6-3. Picket barrier panels under construction at the Slide Creek tailrace barrier located on
2554 the North Umpqua River, Oregon

2555 Because both debris and downstream-migrating fish must pass through physical barriers,
2556 sites must be selected based on the following design objectives:

- 2557 · Minimizing the entrainment of debris
- 2558 · Maximizing the ability to remove debris
- 2559 · Preventing the entrainment and delay of downstream-migrating fish and adult fish that fall
2560 back across the barrier
- 2561 · Maximizing the ability to rapidly remove and bypass any fish that are entrained on the barrier
- 2562 · Allowing the most advantageous orientation of the barrier (typically angled to guide fish to a
2563 collection point)

2564

6.3.1 Risk of Fish Impingement

2565 *If adult fish are exposed to the upstream side of physical barriers, they have a high*
2566 *likelihood of being impinged. Therefore, these types of barriers cannot be used in waters*
2567 *containing species listed under the ESA unless they are continually monitored by personnel on*
2568 *site and have an approved operational plan and a facility design that allows impinged or*
2569 *stranded fish to be removed in a timely manner and prior to becoming injured. Also, these types*
2570 *of barriers should not be used at sites where adult fish are actively migrating downstream or*
2571 *may inadvertently pass over a nearby dam or weir in a downstream direction prior to*
2572 *reorienting again to continue their upstream migration.*

2573 In addition to blocking the upstream passage of adult fish, physical barriers can
2574 effectively block or injure fish migrating downstream (e.g., steelhead kelts, adult salmon that
2575 passed a dam and subsequently migrated back downstream, juvenile salmonids, and resident
2576 fish). This can impact population productivity and should be fully considered during the
2577 planning process.

2578

6.3.2 Debris

2579 *Physical barriers must be continually monitored for debris accumulations, and debris*
2580 *must be removed before it concentrates flow and results in the velocity and head differential*
2581 *criteria being exceeded (Sections 6.3.3.1.2 and 6.3.3.1.3).*

2582 Allowing debris to accumulate on components of physical barriers results in increased
2583 water velocity through the remaining open areas. As debris accumulates, the potential for
2584 impinging downstream migrants increases progressively and can reach unacceptable levels that
2585 result in mortality and injury. Concentrating flow through the remaining open areas of the
2586 barrier (e.g., the open picket area) will also attract upstream migrants to these areas. This can
2587 increase the potential for injury due to adult fish jumping into structural components and for fish
2588 accessing unwanted areas because they jumped and landed over the barrier.

2589

6.3.3 Picket Barriers and Fixed Bar Racks

2590 Picket barriers and fixed bar racks create a uniform, low-velocity flow that is discharged
2591 through a series of bars or screens that cover the entire exclusion area.

2592 The following specific criteria or guidelines apply to picket barriers and fixed bar racks.

2593 6.3.3.1 Openings

2594 *The spaces between bars of a diffuser must be sized to prevent fish passage and injury*
2595 *(Bates 1992). The clear opening between bars in bar rack panels, between pickets in picket*
2596 *panels, and between panels and abutments must be less than or equal to 1 inch to exclude*
2597 *anadromous salmonids and less than or equal to 0.75 inch to exclude Pacific lamprey. Smaller*
2598 *openings may be required if resident species are also present that need to be excluded by the*
2599 *facility.*

2600 Openings larger than 1 inch may allow the heads of small salmon and steelhead to pass
2601 through the picket opening. This can lead to salmonids and other species becoming caught on
2602 the picket by their operculum that covers and protects the gills. Fish caught in this manner—
2603 between bars or pickets and gaps between panels or panels and abutments—often die because
2604 they are unable to extricate themselves off the picket.

2605 **6.3.3.2 Design velocity**

2606 *The average velocity through pickets should be less than 1 ft/s for all design flows*
2607 *(Clay 1995). The maximum velocity through the pickets should be less than 1.25 ft/s, or one-half*
2608 *the velocity of adjacent passage route flows, whichever is lower. When river velocities exceed*
2609 *these criteria, such as due to increasing flows or debris accumulations, the picket barrier must*
2610 *be removed.*

2611 The average design velocity is calculated by dividing streamflow by the total submerged
2612 picket area over the design range of streamflows (Gauley et al. 1966). As discussed in
2613 Section 6.3.2, non-uniform or excessive velocities through the structure can create false
2614 attraction conditions that delay fish and induce upstream migrants to attempt to jump over the
2615 barrier, potentially injuring the fish.

2616 **6.3.3.3 Head differential**

2617 *The maximum head differential must not exceed 0.3 foot above the normal head*
2618 *differential across the pickets that occurs under clean picket conditions. If this differential is*
2619 *exceeded, the pickets must be cleaned as soon as possible.*

2620 Excessive head differential (head loss) through the structure can cause a cascading effect
2621 of water through the pickets, which increases the likelihood of upstream migrating fish leaping at
2622 the structure. Clay (1995) and DOI (1987) provide formulas to calculate head loss through
2623 picket barriers and trash racks.

2624 **6.3.3.4 Debris and sediment**

2625 *A debris and sediment removal plan must be considered in the design of the barrier that*
2626 *anticipates the entire range of conditions expected at the site. Debris must be removed before*
2627 *accumulations develop that violate the average design river velocity and head differential*
2628 *criteria (Sections 6.3.3.1.2 and 6.3.3.1.3, respectively).*

2629 **6.3.3.5 Orientation of physical barrier**

2630 *Physical barriers must be designed to lead fish to a safe passage route.*

2631 Leading fish to a safe passage route can be achieved by angling the structural barrier
2632 toward the route, providing nearly uniform velocities across the entire horizontal length of the
2633 structural barrier, and providing a sufficient level of attraction flow that leads fish to the route
2634 and minimizes the potential for fish being falsely attracted to flow coming through the picket
2635 barrier.

2636 **6.3.3.6 Picket freeboard**

2637 *Depending on the angle of the pickets (from vertical), the pickets must be designed such*
2638 *that they extend out of the water and at least 2 vertical feet above the water surface at the upper*
2639 *design flow level.*

2640 The purpose of the picket freeboard is to prevent fish from leaping over the barrier. Note
2641 that if the angle of the pickets is relatively steep, a freeboard of 2 feet may be insufficient to
2642 block stronger fish from leaping over the pickets, depending on site-specific conditions.

2643 **6.3.3.7 Submerged depth**

2644 *The minimum depth at the picket barrier at low design flow must be 2 feet for at least*
2645 *10% of the river cross section at the barrier. Picket barriers should be sited where there is a*
2646 *relatively constant depth over the entire stream width.*

2647 **6.3.3.8 Picket porosity**

2648 *The picket array must have a minimum of 40% open area.*

2649 Picket barriers with insufficient porosity may generate excessive head loss for the given
2650 river velocity. This head loss is exhibited as a cascade of water as it passes through the pickets,
2651 which may induce fish to jump and increase the potential for injury at the barrier.

2652 **6.3.3.9 Picket construction and material**

2653 *Pickets must comprise flat bars where the narrow edge of the bar is aligned with flow or*
2654 *round columns of steel, aluminum, or durable plastic. Other shapes may be approved by NMFS,*
2655 *but must not increase the risk of fish impingement.*

2656 Picket panels should be of sufficient structural integrity to withstand high streamflows
2657 and some debris loading without deforming (i.e., without exceeding the clear opening criteria
2658 cited in Section 6.3.3.1.1, compromising the cleaning system, or permanently changing the shape
2659 of the picket panel). Pickets that become permanently deformed must be repaired or replaced as
2660 soon as possible. Pickets that deform or bend to a point where the clear opening criteria cited in
2661 Section 6.3.3.1.1 is no longer met under the design flow and debris loading conditions
2662 incorporated into the design can create openings that allow fish to pass the barrier or become
2663 injured as they try to force their way through the pickets.

2664 **6.3.3.10 Sill**

2665 *A uniform concrete sill, or an alternative approved by NMFS, should be provided to form*
2666 *a foundation for the pickets and ensure that fish cannot pass under the picket barrier.*

2667 **6.3.4 Diffusers**

2668 Diffusers are a specialized type of picket barriers or fixed bar racks where a flow control
2669 or hydraulic baffling structure is incorporated into the design to regulate flow through the barrier

2670 or bar rack. Wall-oriented (i.e., vertical) and floor-oriented (i.e., horizontal) diffusers are most
2671 commonly used as part of the AWS in adult ladders to prevent adult fish from entering the AWS
2672 system or delaying their migration due to being attracted to AWS flow entering the ladder. Wall
2673 diffusers are also used as tailrace barriers to prevent fish from entering tailraces downstream of
2674 hydroelectric dams, while encouraging fish to continue to move upstream through another
2675 stream, river route, or channel.

2676 The following specific criteria or guidelines apply to diffusers.

2677 **6.3.4.1 Openings**

2678 *The spaces between bars of a diffuser must be sized to prevent fish from passing through*
2679 *the bars or becoming injured (Bates 1992). The clear opening between pickets and between*
2680 *pickets and abutments must be less than or equal to 1 inch to block anadromous salmonids.*
2681 *These clear openings must be less than or equal to 0.75 inch to block Pacific lamprey. Smaller*
2682 *openings may be required if resident species are also present that need to be excluded by the*
2683 *facility.*

2684 Wall diffusers consist of vertically oriented diffuser panels of flat bar stock using
2685 non-corrosive materials. The orientation of flat bar stock must be designed to maximize the open
2686 area of the diffuser panel. If smaller fish species or life stages are present, smaller clear openings
2687 between the bars may be required.

2688 **6.3.4.2 Design velocity and orientation**

2689 *The average velocity through a wall diffuser should be less than 1 ft/s for all design*
2690 *flows. The maximum velocity at any point on the diffuser should be less than 1.25 ft/s, or*
2691 *one-half the velocity of flow in an adjacent passage route, whichever is lower. Diffuser*
2692 *velocities should be nearly uniform. The orientation of the diffuser should be selected that*
2693 *assists in guiding fish towards the safe passage route. The face of the diffuser panels (the*
2694 *surface exposed to the fish) must be flush with the wall or floor.*

2695 These criteria are based on results of laboratory studies where passage times of spring-
2696 and fall-run Chinook salmon and steelhead increased progressively with increased diffuser flows
2697 and where diffuser velocities increased from 0.25 to 1.25 ft/s (Gauley et al. 1966).

2698 **6.3.4.3 Porosity control baffles**

2699 *Similar to juvenile fish screens, a diffuser should include a system of porosity control*
2700 *baffles located just upstream of the diffuser pickets to ensure the average velocities at the face of*
2701 *the diffuser can meet criteria.*

2702 Porosity control panels control the amount of flow and velocities through the diffuser
2703 pickets and create a uniform flow condition at the face of the pickets.

2704 **6.3.4.4 Debris removal**

2705 *The diffuser design must include access for personnel to be able to remove debris from*
2706 *each diffuser. This criterion is not required when the intake to the diffuser water supply is*
2707 *equipped with a juvenile fish screen (Chapter 10).*

2708 The dewatering screen system also removes debris from water being supplied to the
2709 diffuser.

2710 **6.3.4.5 Edges**

2711 *The edges of all diffuser surfaces exposed to fish must be rounded or ground smooth to*
2712 *the touch, with all edges aligning in a single smooth plane.*

2713 Rounding and grinding smooth surfaces that fish can contact and making all diffuser
2714 surfaces flush reduces the potential for fish injury.

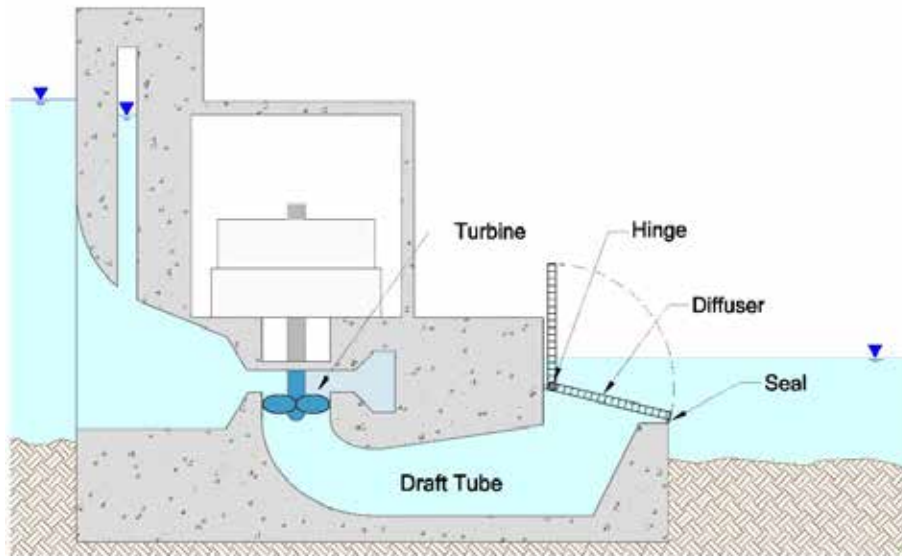
2715 **6.3.4.6 Elevation**

2716 *Wall-style diffusers must be submerged throughout the range of operation (i.e., the top*
2717 *elevation of the wall diffuser must be below the water surface elevation associated with the low*
2718 *flow selected for the design).*

2719 Maintaining a submerged wall-style diffuser prevents water from cascading through the
2720 diffuser, which can induce adult fish to leap at the surface disturbance and become injured when
2721 contacting the diffuser material and wall and delay their migration up the ladder.

2722 **6.3.5 Horizontal Outlet Diffusers**

2723 A horizontal outlet diffuser is a device that can be used to prevent fish from entering a
2724 drain or discharge pipe. They can also be used below a powerhouse at the turbine draft tube
2725 outlet to prevent adult fish from ascending up the draft tube discharge during unit start up or shut
2726 down or during normal operations if draft tube velocity is low (typically less than 16 ft/s;
2727 Figure 6-4). This type of diffuser also prevents fish from entering the draft tube and contacting
2728 the turbine runners, which may result in injury or mortality. If the turbine draft tubes are located
2729 in close proximity to the entrance of an upstream passage system (e.g., a fishway), a horizontal
2730 outlet diffuser system may be the appropriate choice for an exclusion system.



2731
 2732 Figure 6-4. Layout of a horizontal outlet diffuser covering the entrance to a turbine draft tube

2733 **6.3.5.1 Design velocity**

2734 *Average flow velocity exiting the horizontal outlet diffuser grating must be less than*
 2735 *1.25 ft/s and be distributed as uniformly as possible. The maximum point velocity should not*
 2736 *exceed 2 ft/s.*

2737 **6.3.5.2 Porosity control baffles**

2738 *Similar to juvenile fish screens, diffusers should include a system of porosity control*
 2739 *baffles located just upstream of the diffuser pickets to ensure the average velocities at the face of*
 2740 *the diffusers can meet criteria.*

2741 Porosity control panels control the amount of flow and velocities through the diffuser
 2742 pickets and create a uniform flow condition at the face of the pickets.

2743 **6.3.5.3 Openings**

2744 *The spaces between bars of a diffuser must be sized to prevent fish passage and injury*
 2745 *(Bates 1992). The clear opening between bars, and between bars and abutments, must be less*
 2746 *than or equal to 1 inch to exclude anadromous salmonids and less than or equal to 0.75 inch to*
 2747 *prevent Pacific lamprey from entering the chamber behind the diffuser. Smaller openings may*
 2748 *be required if resident species are also present that need to be excluded by the facility.*

2749 Horizontal outlet diffuser panels consist of non-corrosive, horizontally oriented flat bar
 2750 stock. The orientation of flat bar stock must be designed to maximize the open area of the
 2751 diffuser panel.

2752 **6.3.5.4 Edges**

2753 *The edges of all diffuser surfaces exposed to fish must be rounded or ground smooth to*
2754 *the touch, with all edges aligning in a single smooth plane.*

2755 Rounding and grinding smooth surfaces that fish can contact and making all diffuser
2756 surfaces flush reduces the potential for fish injury.

2757 **6.3.5.5 Debris removal**

2758 *The diffuser design must include access for personnel to be able to remove debris from*
2759 *each diffuser. This criterion is not required when the intake to the diffuser water supply is*
2760 *equipped with a juvenile fish screen (Chapter 10).*

2761 Trash (bar) racks installed at the intake to the diffuser system and a juvenile fish screen
2762 (if installed) remove debris from water being supplied to the diffuser.

2763 **6.3.5.6 Submergence**

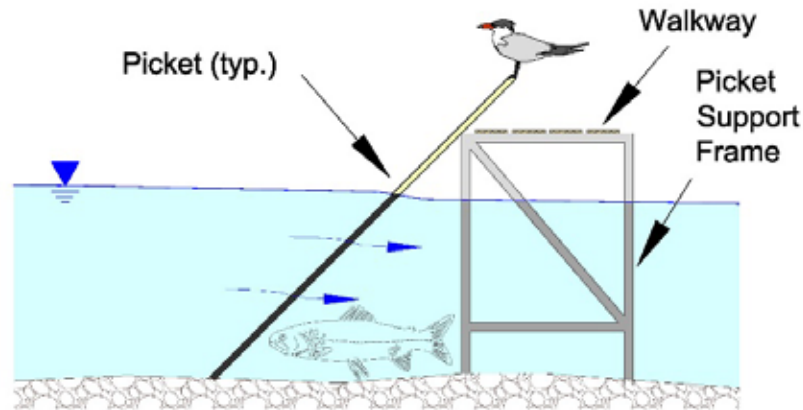
2764 *Horizontal outlet diffusers must be submerged a minimum of 2 feet for all tailwater*
2765 *elevations.*

2766 **6.3.6 Fish Weirs**

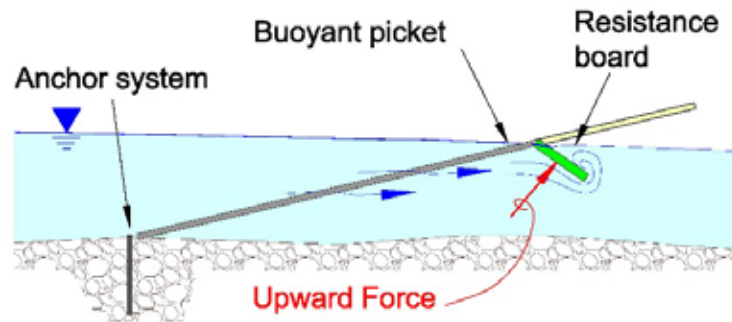
2767 Fish weirs are physical barrier systems that are constructed across a stream (Figure 6-2).
2768 The purpose of fish weirs is to prevent fish from passing upstream of the weir and guide
2769 upstream-migrating fish to a trap. The weirs are constructed of panels of metal or plastic pickets
2770 that extend from the bottom of the stream to an elevation several feet above the water surface.
2771 The clear spacing between the pickets is selected based upon the size of the target species being
2772 trapped. When viewed from above, weirs are usually placed at angles greater than 90 degrees
2773 from the main thread of the current (Figure 6-2). The trap is placed at the most upstream area of
2774 the weir. The angle between the direction of stream or river flow and the weir results in the weir
2775 being longer than if it was positioned perpendicular to the bank and reduces water velocity
2776 through the pickets.

2777 **6.3.6.1 Types of fish weirs**

2778 The two most commonly used types of weirs in the WCR are rigid (frame-supported)
2779 weirs and floating resistance board picket weirs (Figure 6-5). Weirs can be temporary or
2780 permanent.



(a) Cross section through rigid (frame-supported) picket weir.



(b) Cross section through floating resistance board picket weir.

2781

2782 Figure 6-5. Cross sections of rigid and floating picket weirs

2783 The pickets in rigid weirs are placed at an angle greater than 45 degrees above the water
 2784 surface. Clean pickets in a floating weir have a very small angle above the water surface, and
 2785 increased flow velocity and debris loading can further reduce the angle and can eventually
 2786 submerge the floating weir panels.

2787 Rigid weirs use panels of solid metal rods or hollow conduits that are supported by rigid
 2788 frameworks (Figure 6-6). The supporting structures for temporary weirs can be light metal
 2789 trusses or frames that are installed at the start of the fish passage season and are removed at the
 2790 end of the trapping season. Permanent installations consist of foundations, frameworks, and
 2791 abutments that stay in the river. However, the pickets at permanent installations are removed
 2792 from the weir during periods when fish are not being trapped and during winter at locations that
 2793 experience icing.



2794

2795 Figure 6-6. Elk Creek Dam picket weir (Elk Creek, Oregon)

2796 The main advantage of rigid weirs is that the pickets are supported both along the river
2797 bottom and above the water surface, which may provide greater lateral stability and help to
2798 maintain constant spacing between the pickets. The main disadvantage of rigid weirs is that they
2799 are more susceptible to damage with increased debris loads experienced during high flows. High
2800 flows and debris can create sufficient force on the face of the panels such that the entire structure
2801 can be washed away. Some trap operators remove the pickets from the weir when they
2802 anticipate the occurrence of high flows.

2803 Floating resistance board weirs are constructed using panels of hollow plastic piping or
2804 conduits that are capped at both ends to provide buoyancy. A resistance board at the
2805 downstream end of the pickets directs the local flow downwards, which creates an uplift force
2806 and a drag force on the pickets (Tobin 1994). In situations where the resistance board does not
2807 provide enough uplift (i.e., under conditions of low stream velocities), the board can be replaced
2808 with a long, linear float to support the picket panels. The pickets extend downstream and above
2809 the water surface to prevent fish from jumping over. The Alaska Department of Fish and Game
2810 has developed a user's manual for installing, operating, removing, and storing resistance board
2811 weirs used to count adult salmon migrating upstream based on direct experience, providing
2812 considerable information on this type of picket barrier (Stewart 2003).

2813 The advantage of floating weirs is that they are less prone to damage over a wider range
2814 of flows and debris loads. High flows can also submerge the panels, which also tends to move
2815 debris off the panels and reduce the downstream pressure on the panels. The main disadvantages
2816 of floating weirs include the following:

- 2817
- 2818 · Debris can easily be trapped on top of the pickets due to the low angle of the panels.
 - 2819 · Fish can pass over the pickets when the pickets are submerged during high flows.
 - 2820 · The pickets may be more susceptible to lateral current forces because the pickets are supported only by the bottom of the river.

2821 · In situations where adult fish are upstream of the weir and they fall back downstream, or they
2822 are migrating downstream, the fish can easily become stranded on the pickets and die due to
2823 the low approach angle and force of the flow that tends to push the fish up onto the dry part
2824 of the pickets.

2825 **6.3.6.2 Site selection**

2826 *Weirs should be constructed at sites that have the following characteristics (Zimmerman*
2827 *and Zabkar 2007):*

- 2828 · *Construction, operation, and maintenance activities can be conducted safely.*
- 2829 · *The river should be wide and shallow (about 3 feet maximum depth at normal flows) with*
2830 *uniform flow distribution.*
- 2831 · *The substrate should consist of gravel and small cobbles and be without boulders in the weir*
2832 *alignment.*
- 2833 · *Traps must have sufficient flow depth during minimum expected river flow stages and be*
2834 *accessible during flood flows. More than one trap location may be required.*

2835 The site should be low gradient and straight, with uniform depth and width, and have
2836 areas of sufficient depth for adult holding pools upstream and downstream of the weir (Hevlin
2837 and Rainey 1993).

2838 **6.3.6.3 Velocity**

2839 *Water velocity at the river channel cross section of the weir location should be a*
2840 *maximum of 2 ft/s at low flows if a concrete apron is used (Hevlin and Rainey 1993), and*
2841 *velocity and depth should allow for safe access to the weir under normal flows (Zimmerman and*
2842 *Zabkar 2007)*

2843 **6.3.6.4 Picket spacing and freeboard**

2844 *The clear spacing between the pickets and the freeboard has the same requirements as*
2845 *those for other structural barriers (Sections 6.3.3.1, 6.3.4.1, and 6.3.5.2). The clear opening*
2846 *between bars in bar rack panels, between pickets in picket panels, and between panels and*
2847 *abutments must be less than or equal to 1 inch to exclude anadromous salmonids and less than*
2848 *or equal to 0.75 inch to exclude Pacific lamprey.*

2849 **6.3.6.5 Suitability at sites with downstream migrants and monitoring**

2850 *Fish weirs are not suitable for sites with downstream-migrating adult fish (e.g., steelhead*
2851 *kelts, salmon that pass the structure but migrate downstream [i.e., fallback], and resident fish).*
2852 *If deployed in these situations, weir operators must provide around-the-clock monitoring and*
2853 *fish salvage efforts for as long as these barriers are in place (Section 6.3.1).*

2854 While blocking the upstream passage of fish, fish weirs can also block the migration of,
2855 or injure, fish migrating downstream (e.g., steelhead kelts, adult salmon, juvenile life stages, and
2856 resident fish) and prevent them from completing their life cycle. When weir pickets are at a low
2857 angle with respect to the water surface (i.e., floating weirs), downstream-migrating adult fish can

2858 become stranded as they are pushed downstream along the pickets and the water becomes
2859 shallow. Juvenile passage openings or structures should be provided as part of the design, or
2860 these weirs should be removed during the juvenile salmonid outmigration season. When rigid
2861 weirs are properly designed and sited, adult and juvenile fish that are migrating downstream are
2862 guided along the face of the weirs to the downstream apex of the weir and the shoreline where
2863 they can be trapped or released downstream.

2864 **6.4 Drop Structure Barriers**

2865 Drop structure barriers create conditions that target species are incapable of overcoming
2866 based on their swimming abilities or behavioral traits. A condition affecting swimming ability is
2867 the creation of a shallow, high-velocity flow for a significant distance, which most salmonids
2868 cannot pass. Hydraulic conditions can also interact with fish behaviors, including the reluctance
2869 of American shad to pass through a submerged orifice in a ladder or leap a ladder weir under
2870 plunging flow conditions. Both are examples of incorporating knowledge about the swimming
2871 ability and behavior of target species into facility designs so that the facility becomes a migration
2872 barrier.

2873 **6.4.1 Orientation of Drop Structure Barriers**

2874 *As with physical barriers, drop structure barriers must be designed to lead fish to a safe*
2875 *passage route.*

2876 This can be achieved by angling the barrier toward a safe passage route and by providing
2877 the following:

- 2878 · Nearly uniform velocities across the entire horizontal length of the barrier
- 2879 · Sufficient attraction flow that leads fish into the safe passage route and minimizes the
2880 potential for false attraction

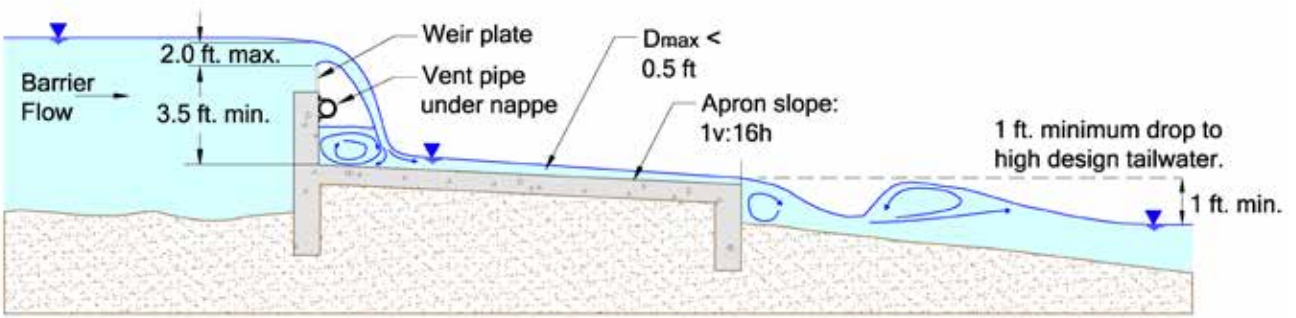
2881 **6.4.2 Upstream Impacts**

2882 *Since this type of barrier creates an upstream impoundment, the designer must consider*
2883 *backwater effects upstream of the barrier that may induce loss of power generation, inundation*
2884 *of property, and sediment deposition in the impoundment.*

2885 **6.4.3 Combination Velocity and Vertical Drop Barriers**

2886 **6.4.3.1 Description and purpose**

2887 A combination velocity and drop barrier consists of a weir and concrete apron
2888 (Figure 6-7). Upstream passage is prevented by a shallow, high-velocity flow on the apron with
2889 an impassable vertical jump over the weir upstream of the apron. A fish that negotiates the apron
2890 and reaches the base of the weir is unable to pass the weir due to insufficient water depth needed
2891 to reorient its position and the lack of a pool needed to accelerate to leap over the weir sill
2892 (Wagner 1967; Weaver et al. 1976).



2893

2894 Figure 6-7. Cross section of a combination velocity and vertical drop barrier

2895 **6.4.3.2 Specific criteria and guidelines**

2896 **6.4.3.2.1 Weir height**

2897 *The minimum weir height relative to the maximum apron elevation is 3.5 feet*
 2898 *(Wagner 1967).*

2899 This design assumes a straight, uniform, linear weir crest that will create uniform flow
 2900 conditions on the apron. Labyrinth-style weirs are not allowed since they concentrate flow
 2901 on the apron and create non-uniform flow conditions downstream.

2902 **6.4.3.2.2 Apron length**

2903 *The minimum apron length (extending downstream from the base of a weir) is 16 feet.*

2904 This criterion is based, in part, on results of laboratory studies where adult Chinook
 2905 salmon and steelhead were blocked by a velocity barrier dam with a 15-foot-long apron under
 2906 two test conditions: 1) a vertical dam height of 3 feet with 1 foot of head; and 2) a vertical dam
 2907 height of 4 feet with 2 feet of head (Slatick and Wagner 1989).

2908 **6.4.3.2.3 Apron slope**

2909 *The minimum apron slope in a downstream direction is 1:16 (vertical:horizontal).*

2910 **6.4.3.2.4 Weir head**

2911 *The maximum head over the weir crest is 2 feet.*

2912 Other combinations of weir height and weir crest head may be approved by NMFS on a
 2913 site-specific basis.

2914 **6.4.3.2.5 Apron elevation**

2915 *The elevation of the downstream end of the apron must be greater than the tailrace water*
 2916 *surface elevation corresponding to the high design flow (BOR 2006). There should be at least*

2917 *1 foot of elevation difference between the water surface elevation at the downstream end of the*
2918 *apron and the high design tailwater elevation.*

2919 **6.4.3.2.6 Flow venting**

2920 *The flow over the weir must be fully and continuously vented along the entire weir length*
2921 *to allow a fully aerated flow nappe to develop between the weir crest and the apron (BOR 2006).*

2922 Full aeration of the flow nappe prevents an increase in water surface behind the nappe,
2923 reducing the opportunity for fish to stage and jump the weir.

2924 **6.4.3.2.7 Flow depth on the apron**

2925 *Flow depth on the apron should not exceed 0.5 foot (Wagner 1967).*

2926 At sites where a maximum depth of 0.5 foot cannot be maintained, apron velocities of
2927 20 ft/s in association with a sill height (i.e., minimum weir height relative to the maximum apron
2928 elevation) of 5.25 feet have been used successfully (Wagner 1967).⁵

2929 **6.4.3.2.8 Minimum flow velocity over the apron**

2930 *A minimum velocity of 16 ft/s is recommended by Wagner (1967).*

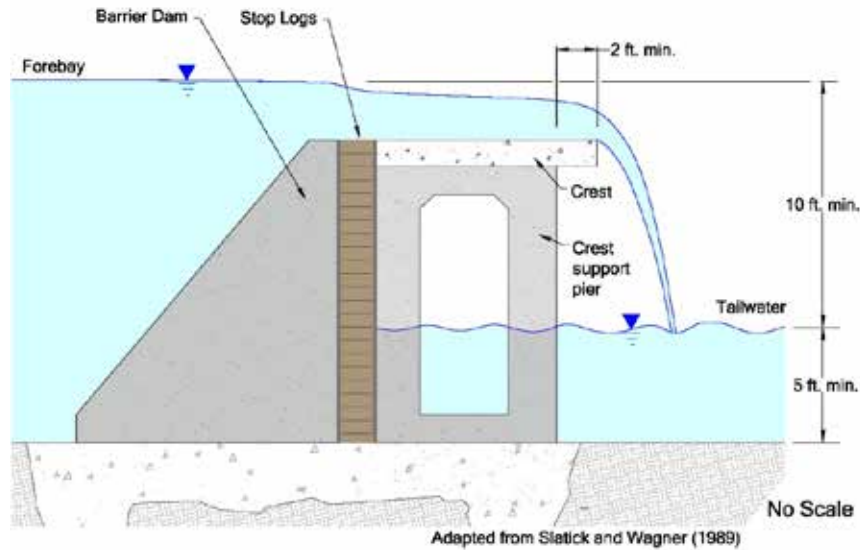
2931 The recommendation by Wagner (1967) is based on Weaver (1963) who reported that
2932 Chinook salmon and steelhead could swim against a 16-ft/s velocity for a distance of at least
2933 85 feet in a test flume.

2934 **6.4.4 Vertical Drop Barriers**

2935 **6.4.4.1 Description and purpose**

2936 A vertical drop barrier functions as an exclusion barrier by providing head in excess of
2937 the leaping ability of the target fish species (Figure 6-8). Vertical drop barriers can be designed
2938 based on a concrete monolith, rubber dam, bottom-hinged leaf gate, or an alternative approved
2939 by NMFS.

⁵ Wagner (1967) does not provide any additional information on this particular barrier configuration. If it is assumed that flow on the apron is 8 inches deep at 20 ft/s, the discharge per linear foot is approximately 13.5 ft³/s. This translates to a maximum of 2.5 feet of head over a sharp crested weir. This barrier configuration should be biologically tested before a prototype facility is constructed.



2940
2941 Figure 6-8. Cross section of a vertical drop barrier

2942 **6.4.4.2 Specific criteria and guidelines**

2943 **6.4.4.2.1 Minimum height**

2944 *The minimum height of a vertical drop structure must be 10 feet relative to the high*
 2945 *design flow (Wagner 1967; Bell 1991; Clay 1995). This is measured as the water surface level*
 2946 *of the forebay relative to the water surface level of the tailrace.*

2947 **6.4.4.2.2 Cantilever**

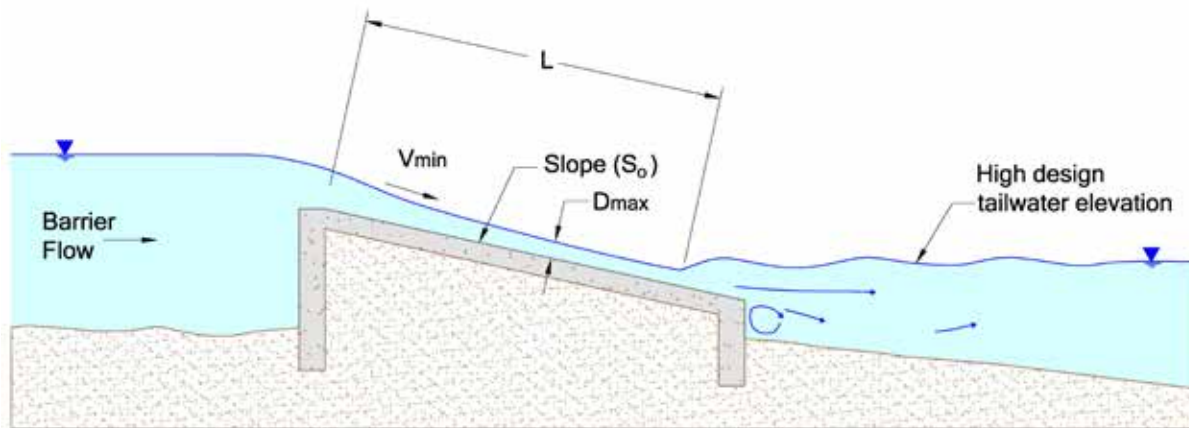
2948 *If the potential for injury to fish from leaping exists, the downstream crest of the barrier*
 2949 *must extend over the tailwater at least 2 feet beyond any structural surfaces.*

2950 **6.4.4.2.3 Minimum flow depth**

2951 *Provisions must be made to ensure that fish jumping at flow over the vertical drop*
 2952 *structure will land without contacting any solid surface and in a pool that is a minimum of 5 feet*
 2953 *deep.*

2954 **6.4.5 Velocity Barriers**

2955 Figure 6-9 shows a cross section of a velocity barrier and its main characteristics that
 2956 include high water velocity and the long longitudinal length of the barrier over which the design
 2957 velocity is maintained. The design approach is to provide a combination of water velocity, travel
 2958 distance, and shallow depth that, taken together, exceed the swimming ability of the target fish.



2959
2960 Figure 6-9. Cross section of a velocity barrier

2961 Designing a velocity barrier to prevent the upstream migration of adult salmonids can be
2962 challenging due to their strong swimming capabilities. Experience has shown that salmonids
2963 will seek flow concentrations or discontinuities in flow (often near the edges of the flow) and use
2964 these features to find a route over this style of barrier. In addition to combining high velocity
2965 and shallow depth, the design must also create uniform flow conditions across the barrier, which
2966 can be difficult to achieve.

2967 NMFS currently does not have criteria or guidelines for a velocity barrier.

2968 NMFS will evaluate a proposed velocity barrier design based upon the hydraulic
2969 conditions created by the barrier and by comparing these conditions to the swimming capabilities
2970 of the target species. In general, velocity barriers are not recommended by NMFS because fish
2971 may spend a long time trying to negotiate the obstacle before seeking an alternate route, which
2972 delays the fish and may exhaust them in the process. As discussed in Section 6.3.3.5, barriers
2973 should also lead fish to a safe passage route, and NMFS will assess this when reviewing a
2974 proposed velocity barrier design.

2975 **6.5 Behavioral Barriers**

2976 Behavioral types of barriers, such as electric and acoustic fields, have had limited
2977 application and were ineffective in most cases (BOR 2006). While electric fields have been used
2978 as barriers for decades, persistent problems with early installations limited their widespread use
2979 (FERC 1995). These limitations included fish injury and mortality, safety, and effectiveness
2980 over a wide range of flow and environmental conditions (Clay 1961). Strobe lights and
2981 acoustical systems have been tested in various applications to block juvenile or adult fish from
2982 entering water intake systems. These systems were tested in the 1980s and 1990s and seemed
2983 promising at first (EPRI 1994) but were found to have limited effectiveness. Thus, strobe lights
2984 and acoustical systems are not widely used within the WCR.

7 Adult Fish Trapping Systems

2985

2986

7.1 Introduction

2987 Chapter 7 presents criteria and guidelines that address the design of new adult fish
2988 trapping systems. This chapter also includes criteria and guidelines that may apply to existing
2989 trapping programs that are being retrofitted. In both cases, traps should be designed to utilize
2990 known or observed fish behaviors to benignly route fish into a holding pool. The holding pool
2991 does not include a volitional exit, and once in the holding pool, fish can be examined for research
2992 and management purposes and loaded into transportation tanks for transport to release locations
2993 or hatcheries.

2994 NMFS typically requires the use of volitional passage for upstream fish passage facilities,
2995 as opposed to trap and haul facilities and operations. Volitional passage is defined as the passage
2996 of fish under all naturally passable flows, whereby a fish can enter and exit any passage
2997 apparatus or structure under its own power, instinct, swimming ability, and migration timing.
2998 Trap and haul is defined as the collection, loading, and transportation of adult fish from a
2999 collection site at or below a barrier to a release point located upstream from the barrier or another
3000 location.⁶

3001 For some facilities, fish transportation is not a requirement and fish are trapped,
3002 monitored, sorted, and released from the trap to continue their upstream migration. For example,
3003 at some trapping facilities hatchery-origin fish are removed to protect wild-origin fish or collect
3004 hatchery broodstock. In the Pacific Northwest, certain areas within watersheds are designated as
3005 wild fish sanctuaries, and hatchery-origin fish must be collected and removed from traps located
3006 below these areas. Also, fish of a specific species or life stage or fish previously tagged for
3007 research purposes may also need to be collected and monitored at trap locations and then
3008 released.

3009 The operational requirements for a trapping facility and its design are highly
3010 interdependent: management objectives for trap operation define the facility's functional design,
3011 and the objectives must be identified before trap design development can proceed. NMFS'
3012 primary objective is that a fish passage facility be designed and operated in a manner that the
3013 facility helps restore the viability of anadromous fish populations, which is why NMFS often
3014 requires that volitional passage be used. Volitional passage facilities can operate 24 hours per
3015 day, 7 days per week, year-round.

⁶ An illustration of a trap and haul operation is available at
http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/fish_passage/about_dams_and_fish/trap_and_haul.html.

3016 Volitional passage is preferred over trap and haul operations due to the following
3017 concerns associated with trapping and transporting adult fish:

- 3018 · Direct injury and mortality to fish associated with handling or mechanical operations
- 3019 · Indirect, adverse, and potentially cumulative effects to fish from holding for an excessive
3020 period in a high-density holding pool, including stress, energy loss, and passage delay
- 3021 · Potential for fish to be injured when jumping at water supplied to a holding pool
- 3022 · Failure of a facility component that results in immediate, direct mortality and delay (e.g.,
3023 temporary loss of water supply to a holding pool or tank)
- 3024 · Potential for poaching or predation to occur at trap facilities
- 3025 · Uncertainty over whether necessary funding, maintenance, and proper operation will occur
3026 over the life of the facility
- 3027 · Availability of trained and experienced personnel to operate the facility over the long term
- 3028 · Concerns over facility operations and operators:
 - 3029 – Likelihood that a facility will not operate at the beginning and end of fish migration
3030 periods because few individuals are present during these periods (this truncates the tails
3031 of the migration seasons, adversely affecting salmon and steelhead population diversity)
 - 3032 – Trap operators accessing the trap and sorting fish intermittently to accommodate
3033 personnel schedules or staffing limitations, which results in fish being held in tanks for
3034 long periods of time

3035 However, there are instances where passing fish over a barrier using trap and haul
3036 techniques may be the only viable passage alternative. For example, thermal stratification can
3037 occur in reservoirs at high head dams during summer, resulting in temperature differentials
3038 between the fishway entrance and water released below the dam. This can affect how fish utilize
3039 volitional passage facilities, and a trap and haul program would provide passage to areas above
3040 the thermally stratified reservoir.

3041 **7.2 Types of Traps**

3042 There are two types of traps. The first type is where a trap is an integral component of
3043 the primary route of fish passage above a barrier. Examples of these traps include the following:

- 3044 · Traps located directly adjacent to a barrier
- 3045 · Traps at the upstream end of a fish ladder
- 3046 · Traps that serve as holding box associated with broodstock collection facilities in tributary
3047 streams in conjunction with intermittent barriers

3048 A trap and haul facility located at the upstream end of a fish ladder is the most common
3049 application of this type of trap.

3050 The second type of trap is an off-ladder design wherein the trap is situated adjacent to a
3051 ladder such that it is not the primary route of passage and does not interfere with the normal
3052 operation of the ladder. The ladder provides volitional passage from the tailrace to the forebay
3053 of the barrier under normal conditions, but when necessary or desired, all or some fish can be
3054 diverted into the trap.

3055 For both types of traps, once fish are in a trap they can be accessed for a variety of
3056 purposes, including the following:

- 3057 · Enumeration
- 3058 · Evaluation for tags and injuries
- 3059 · Sampling for genetic identification
- 3060 · Sorting for various management purposes
- 3061 · Transportation to various locations
- 3062 · Tagging to support fisheries management or research

3063 Fish that are enumerated or evaluated can be released back into the ladder or at another location.

3064 **7.2.1 General Criteria**

3065 *Fish ladders should not be designed or retrofitted with in-ladder traps or fish loading*
3066 *facilities. Rather, fish holding and loading facilities should be placed in an adjacent, off-ladder*
3067 *location in order to route fish targeted for trapping purposes.*

3068 Fishway ladder pools typically do not meet the requirements of trap holding pools.
3069 Therefore, use of fishway ladder pools to site traps can create adverse impacts to the migrating
3070 fish. These impacts include elevated stress, delay, injury, or mortality caused by turbulence,
3071 jumping at water being supplied to the holding pool, and handling. Locating the trap off-ladder
3072 allows the facility to have the operational flexibility to readily switch between volitional ladder
3073 passage and trapping modes of operation.

3074 **7.3 Design Scoping**

3075 **7.3.1 Purpose**

3076 *Proposals to design new facilities or complete major upgrades to existing facilities must*
3077 *address the following issues, or at the very least show how the following issues were considered:*

- 3078 · *Describe the objective of the trapping operation and identify how the fish will be counted,*
3079 *collected (including the expected holding densities), handled, sampled for research or*
3080 *management purposes, transported (how and what frequency), and released.*
- 3081 · *Identify the number of fish that will be targeted and the total number potentially present.*
3082 *This should include the expected peak number of fish per day, seasonal and daily fish*
3083 *returns, future fish return expectations, expected incidental catch, etc.*
- 3084 · *Identify the target species, including ESA-listed species.*
- 3085 · *Identify other species likely to be present at the trap, including ESA-listed species.*
- 3086 · *Describe the environmental conditions expected to occur during trap operation such as*
3087 *water and air temperature, flow conditions (lows and peaks), and debris load.*
- 3088 · *Describe the location, duration, frequency, predicted fish numbers, and scale of the trap and*
3089 *haul operations by developing an operations plan for the trap.*
- 3090 · *Describe the facility's security mechanisms and procedures that will be in place in the*
3091 *operations plan.*
- 3092 · *Describe how fish will be routed during transportation and their ultimate destination.*

- 3093 · *Describe the maximum duration of delay or holding within the trapping system for target and*
3094 *non-target species and life stages.*
3095 · *If a Hatchery and Genetic Management Plan, ESA Section 4(d) Limit 7 Scientific Research*
3096 *and Take Authorization application, or ESA Section 10(a)(1)(A) permit application exists,*
3097 *show how one of these documents was used as the basis for design of a trapping facility. At*
3098 *least one of these types of documents will have to be developed for most trapping facilities*
3099 *and will be available for designing the facility.*

3100 **7.4 Fish Handling Criteria**

3101 Section 7.4 provides criteria and guidelines that are applicable to handling fish in traps.

3102 **7.4.1 Nets**

3103 *The use of nets to capture or move fish must be minimized or eliminated. If nets are used,*
3104 *they should be sanctuary-type nets with solid bottoms that allow minimal dewatering of the fish*
3105 *during netting. All fish must be handled with extreme care.*

3106 **7.4.2 Anesthetization**

3107 *Fish should be anesthetized before being handled.*

3108 The method of anesthetization for ESA-listed anadromous salmonids may be specified by
3109 the appropriate ESA permit, which must be in place prior to any directed take of listed species.
3110 The type of anesthetic to be used can be selected by agreement with NMFS during the design
3111 process and prior to submittal of an ESA permit request.

3112 **7.4.2.1 Recovery**

3113 *Fish that have undergone anesthetization must be allowed to recover from the effects of*
3114 *the anesthetic before being released (Section 7.5.10).*

3115 **7.4.3 Non-Target Fish**

3116 *New or upgraded trapping facilities must be designed such that non-target fish can*
3117 *bypass the anesthetic tank.*

3118 **7.4.4 Frequency**

3119 *Unless otherwise agreed to by NMFS, all fish (i.e., adults and juveniles of all sizes) must*
3120 *be removed from the trap holding pool and raceways at least once every 24 hours whenever the*
3121 *trap is in operation. When either environmental (e.g., water temperature extremes, low*
3122 *dissolved oxygen, or high debris load) or biological conditions (e.g., migration peaks or delay)*
3123 *warrant, fish must be removed more frequently to preclude overcrowding or adverse water*
3124 *quality conditions from developing (Section 7.5.5.2).*

7.4.5 Personnel

Trap personnel that handle fish must be experienced or trained to ensure that fish are handled safely.

7.5 Trap Design Criteria

Section 7.5 provides criteria and guidelines that apply to trap design.

7.5.1 Trap Components

Trap systems should include the following components:

- Removable diffusers or gates located within the fish ladder to block passage and guide fish into the trap
- A holding pool; a transition channel or port that connects the fish ladder to the holding pool; and a trapping mechanism as described in Section 7.5.4 (attraction flow is discharged via devices described in Section 7.5.4)
- A gate to prevent fish from entering the trap area during crowding operations
- A fish crowder (and brail if needed) to encourage adult fish to exit the off-ladder holding pool and enter sorting and loading facilities
- Separate holding pool inflow supply and outflow facilities
- Distribution flume used in conjunction with false weir or steep pass systems to enable fish to enter and exit the holding pool
- A lock or lift for loading fish onto the transportation truck
- A flume, pipe, or ladder to return fish either to the ladder or to the dam forebay where they can continue their upstream migration (when returning fish to the ladder, fish should be allowed to volitionally enter the ladder from a resting pool)

7.5.2 General

7.5.2.1 Location

The entrance to trap facilities should be located in a hydraulically stable, low-velocity (i.e., approximately 1.5 ft/s), accessible area of the upstream passage facility, similar to the requirements for a counting station (Section 5.6).

This location allows fish to be more easily directed toward the trap entrance without excessive turbulence.

7.5.2.2 Flow

Fish ladders should not experience any significant change in fishway flow volume during trap operations.

Fish ladders are often designed to operate within a narrow range of flows; thus, changing the flow volume during trap operations can often compromise the function of the ladder.

3159 Depending on the design, it may be necessary to add or remove flow from the ladder in order to
3160 adjust for the operation of the trap.

3161 **7.5.2.3 Edges**

3162 *All components exposed to fish must have all welds and sharp edges ground smooth to*
3163 *the touch, with other features, such as neoprene padding, added where needed to minimize fish*
3164 *injuries.*

3165 **7.5.2.4 Fish safety**

3166 *Provisions should be included in the facility design to provide guaranteed safety to the*
3167 *fish or a method or manner to release fish back to the river in case of emergency (e.g., power*
3168 *outage or loss of water supply).*

3169 Fish safety provisions may include guaranteed water supply, water level and water supply
3170 alarms, and backup pumps and generators.

3171 **7.5.3 Pickets**

3172 Pickets are used to prevent fish from entering a specific area (e.g., AWS) or to guide fish
3173 to a particular area (e.g., toward a counting window for enumeration or a trap entrance).

3174 **7.5.3.1 Material**

3175 *Pickets must be constructed of non-corrosive materials. Panels may consist of flat bars*
3176 *(where the narrow edge of the bar is aligned with flow) or round columns of steel, aluminum, or*
3177 *durable plastic. All surfaces exposed to fish must be rounded or ground smooth to the touch,*
3178 *with all edges aligning in a single smooth plane to reduce the potential for contact injury.*

3179 **7.5.3.2 Bar spacing**

3180 *The maximum clear spacing between picket bars is 1 inch for adult trapping facilities. At*
3181 *sites where lamprey may be present, pickets should have a maximum 0.75-inch clear spacing*
3182 *between bars.*

3183 At sites where smaller fish are present, a smaller spacing between bars may be required.

3184 **7.5.3.3 Pickets in off-ladder holding pools**

3185 *Off-ladder holding pools should include intake and exit pickets designed to prevent adult*
3186 *fish from exiting the holding pool. These should conform to the criteria identified in Section 6.3.*
3187 *The design of off-ladder holding pools should also include an adjustable overflow weir located*
3188 *downstream of, or in conjunction with, the entrance pickets to control the water surface*
3189 *elevation in the holding pool.*

3190 **7.5.3.4 Blocking pickets**

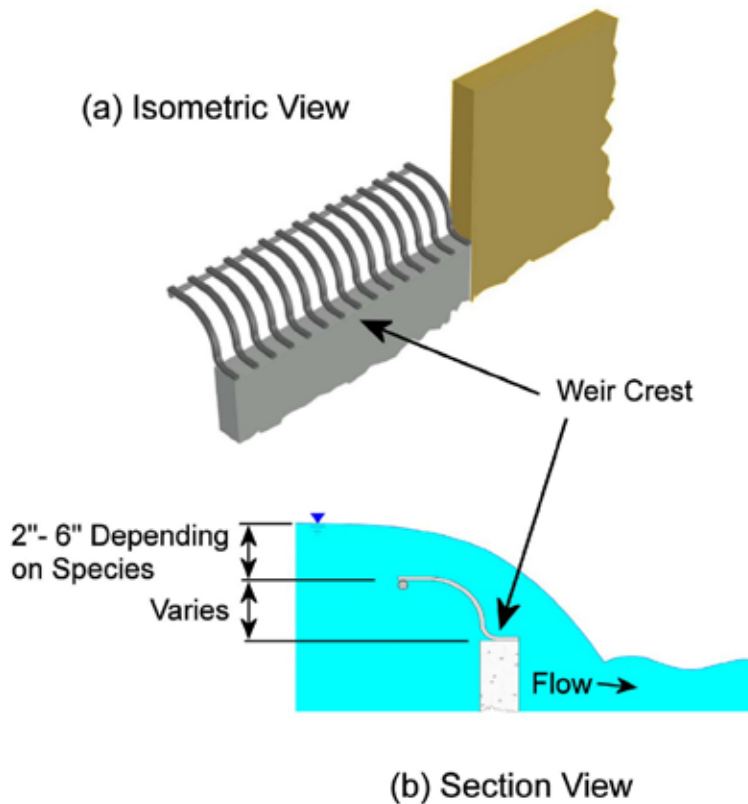
3191 *Removable pickets installed within the ladder to block fish from ascending further and*
3192 *route them into an off-ladder trapping pool must be angled toward the off-ladder trap entrance*
3193 *and comply with the criteria listed in Sections 5.3.7 and 5.6.3.7. Pickets installed within ladders*
3194 *must be completely removed from the ladder when trapping activities are not occurring.*

3195 **7.5.4 Trapping Mechanisms**

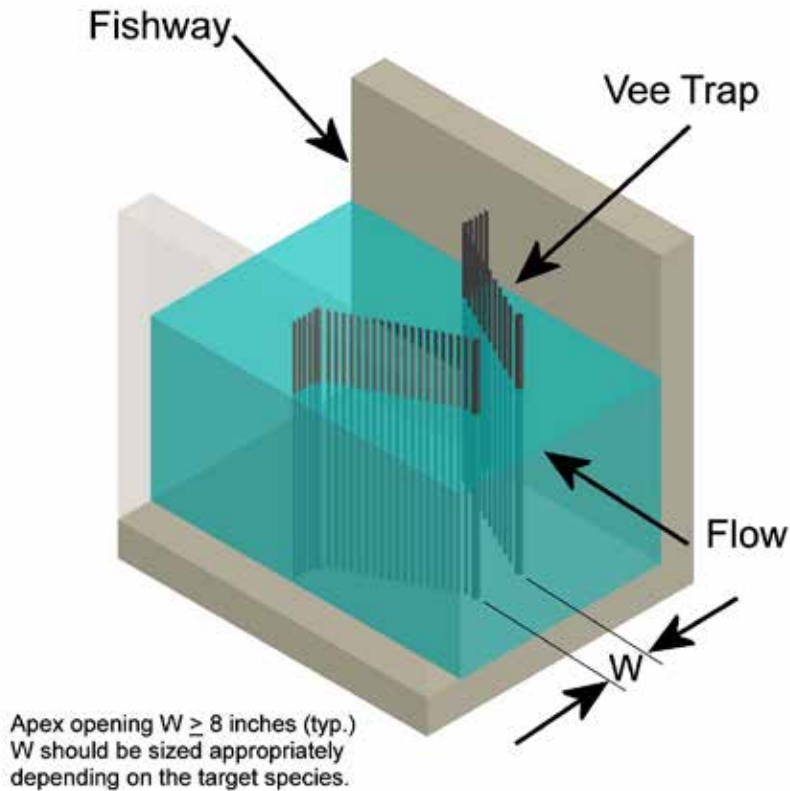
3196 **7.5.4.1 Description and purpose**

3197 *There must be a mechanism that allows fish to enter, but not volitionally exit, a holding*
3198 *pool. The most commonly used mechanisms include finger weirs, Vee trap fykes, or false weirs.*

3199 The maximum velocity over finger traps is 8 ft/s; a minimum velocity of 4 ft/s is
3200 recommenced through Vee traps. When using finger traps, an escape area must be provided at
3201 both ends to prevent fish from being held against the fingers and killed (Bell 1991). Figure 7-1
3202 shows a schematic of a finger weir. Figure 7-2 shows a cutaway of a Vee trap.



3203
3204 Figure 7-1. Finger weir schematic



3205
 3206 Figure 7-2. Cutaway of a Vee trap

3207 **7.5.4.2 Edges**

3208 *All trapping components exposed to fish must have all welds and sharp edges ground*
 3209 *smooth to the touch to minimize injuries. Additional features, such as neoprene padding, may*
 3210 *also be required to minimize fish injuries.*

3211 **7.5.4.3 Materials and bar spacing**

3212 *Materials and bar spacing must conform to Sections 7.5.3.1 and 7.5.3.2.*

3213 **7.5.4.4 Closure**

3214 *Trapping mechanisms must be able to be closed temporarily to avoid spatial conflict with*
 3215 *brail crowding and loading operations. The trapping mechanisms should be designed to*
 3216 *safeguard against fish gaining access to unsafe areas such as areas behind a crowder or under a*
 3217 *floor brail.*

3218 **7.5.5 Holding Pools**

3219 Holding pools and raceways are used to provide safe areas where fish can be held and
 3220 accumulated until the facility operators are prepared to process them (for actions such as sorting,
 3221 evaluation, or transportation).

3222 **7.5.5.1 Water quality**

3223 *Holding pool water quality should be equal to or exceed that of the ambient waters from*
3224 *which fish are trapped.*

3225 Key water quality parameters include water temperature, oxygen content, and pH. The
3226 purpose of this criterion is to provide fish with a safe, healthy holding environment.

3227 **7.5.5.2 Trap holding pool capacity**

3228 The following criteria must be followed with regard to trap holding pool capacity:

- 3229 · *Trap holding pool capacity is based on the number and poundage of fish that can be safely*
3230 *held in a given pool volume for a given time period as well as water quality and quantity.*
- 3231 · *The number of fish is determined by the maximum daily number of fish passing through the*
3232 *ladder or facility, or by the number of fish expected to be trapped and held prior to being*
3233 *transported.*
- 3234 · *Fish poundage is determined by multiplying the weight of the average fish targeted for*
3235 *trapping by the maximum number of fish expected to occupy the trap. Note that the*
3236 *poundage calculation may entail calculations for a number of different fish species.*

3237 **7.5.5.3 Short-term holding**

3238 *Trap holding pools must be sized to provide a minimum volume of 0.25 ft³/lb of fish.*
3239 *Trap water supply flow rate must be at least 0.67 gallon per minute (gpm) per adult fish for the*
3240 *predetermined adult fish trap holding capacity.*

3241 These criteria apply to conditions when water temperatures are less than 50 degrees
3242 Fahrenheit (°F), dissolved oxygen is between 6 and 7 parts per million, and fish are held less
3243 than 24 hours (Senn et al. 1984; Bell 1991; Bates 1992). These criteria are based on the long-
3244 term holding requirements presented by Senn et al. (1984), which have been modified and
3245 adapted to short-term holding conditions.

3246 **7.5.5.4 Long-term holding**

3247 *Trap holding pool water volumes and water supply rates should be increased by a factor*
3248 *of 2 (0.5 ft³/lb of fish and at least 1.34 gpm per adult fish, respectively).*

3249 Long-term holding should not exceed 96 hours. Trap and haul facilities are not intended
3250 for the long-term holding of adults (e.g., hatchery broodstock). However, NMFS will consider
3251 additional information or research regarding adult fish holding times and densities, if provided.

3252 **7.5.5.5 Holding pool capacity when water temperatures are greater than 50°F**

3253 If water temperatures are greater than 50°F, the poundage of fish held should be reduced
3254 by 5% for each degree above 50°F (Senn et al. 1984). The trap capacity and average weight of
3255 targeted fish values to be used in a design are subject to approval by NMFS.

3256 For example, to hold 100 lb of fish for less than 24 hours, the holding pool would need to
3257 provide a volume of 25 ft³ (0.25 ft³/lb of fish) at 50°F. To hold 100 lb of fish for more than
3258 24 hours (but less than 96 hours), the holding pool would need to provide a volume of 50 ft³
3259 (0.5 ft³/lb of fish) at 50°F. At 60°F, the poundage of fish that could be held in 50 ft³ would be 50
3260 lb (100 lb × [5% × 10 degrees]) or 1 lb/ft³.

3261 **7.5.5.6 Trap holding pool inflow**

3262 The following criteria must be followed with regard to trap holding pool inflow:

- 3263 · *Inflow must be routed through an upstream diffuser designed in accordance with the criteria*
3264 *identified in Section 5.3.7.*
- 3265 · *The maximum average velocity through the diffuser that is acceptable is 1 ft/s for vertical*
3266 *diffusers and 0.5 ft/s for horizontal diffusers.*
- 3267 · *Horizontal diffusers should be used when supplying water directly to fish holding pools to*
3268 *reduce the potential for fish jumping at the diffuser flow (Bell 1991).*
- 3269 · *For both vertical and horizontal diffusers, baffling or other methods of energy dissipation*
3270 *should be used to prevent excessive turbulence and surging, which may induce adult jumping*
3271 *within the trap.*
- 3272 · *Flow distribution through the diffuser should not cause fish to crowd into a particular area*
3273 *of the holding pool. However, when fish are being crowded for handling or routing, it is best*
3274 *to take advantage of their natural behavior and concentrate the water supply near the end of*
3275 *the pool where fish are being encouraged to move to as part of the operation.*

3276 **7.5.5.7 Shading**

3277 *Consideration should be given to providing shading for holding pools and raceways.*

3278 Shading can reduce stress and jumping in adult fish and can reduce the potential for sun
3279 burn (Bell 1991).

3280 **7.5.5.8 Holding pool water depth**

3281 *The minimum depth of water in the holding pool is 5 feet.*

3282 This is the same minimum depth criterion as is specified for fish ladder pools.

3283 **7.5.5.9 Adult jumping**

3284 *Trap holding pool designs must include provisions that minimize adult jumping, which*
3285 *may result in fish injury or mortality.*

3286 Examples of provisions that reduce jumping include the following (Bell 1991):

- 3287 · Incorporating a high freeboard on holding pool walls of 5 feet or more (note that Bell [1991]
3288 recommends incorporating up to 6 feet of freeboard into the facility design)
- 3289 · Covering or shading the holding pool to keep fish in a darkened environment
- 3290 · Providing netting over the pool that is strong enough to prevent adults from breaking through
3291 the mesh fabric

- 3292 · Providing sprinklers above the holding pool water surface to break up the water surface and
3293 reduce the ability of fish to detect movement above the trap pool
- 3294 · Designing the corners of the holding pools to have a minimum radius of 18 inches
- 3295 · Ensuring that water from distribution flumes and pipes does not drop directly into the holding
3296 pool
- 3297 · Ensuring that there are no areas of strong horizontal light nor dark areas present on the
3298 surface of the holding pool

3299 **7.5.6 Crowders**

3300 Crowders are porous panels that can be deployed into a holding pool and used to move
3301 fish horizontally to the end of the pool for collection by a hopper or lift, or to encourage the fish
3302 to leave the holding pool. Crowders can be pushed by personnel or mechanically operated.

3303 **7.5.6.1 Bar spacing**

3304 *Holding pool crowders should have a maximum clear opening between bars of*
3305 *0.875 inch. Gaps around the sides of crowder panels must not exceed 1 inch. The side and*
3306 *bottom seals of the crowder panel must allow the crowder to move without binding and must*
3307 *prevent fish from entering the area behind the crowder panel.*

3308 *If smolt-sized juvenile salmonids or other small fish are expected to be retained in the*
3309 *adult holding pool, the maximum clear bar spacing of the crowder panel (and brail if present)*
3310 *should be reduced to 0.25 inch, and any gaps around the sides the crowder panels must not*
3311 *exceed 0.375 inch.*

3312 Often, smaller-sized fish find their way into and become caught in the adult trap holding
3313 pool. Provisions must be incorporated into the trap design to safely remove smaller-sized fish
3314 from the holding pool and return them to the river.

3315 **7.5.6.2 Material**

3316 *Crowder panels must be constructed of non-corrosive materials. The use of galvanized*
3317 *material should be avoided if possible, and otherwise minimized. Panels may consist of fish*
3318 *screen material such as profile bar or perforated plate material, flat bars where the narrow edge*
3319 *of the bar is aligned with flow, or round columns of steel, aluminum, or durable plastic. All*
3320 *edges and surfaces exposed to fish must be rounded or ground smooth to the touch.*

3321 The galvanization process uses zinc, which can be toxic to fish (this is why non-corrosive
3322 materials for crowder panels should be used). During the crowding process, fish are extremely
3323 likely to come into direct contact with the crowder panels. To reduce the potential for fish to be
3324 descaled or injured when being crowded, all surfaces and edges that fish can contact need to
3325 ground smooth or rounded.

3326 **7.5.6.3 Crowding process and crowding speeds**

3327 *For mechanical crowders, the beginning of the crowding process can be automated, but*
3328 *at the end of the process when fish densities are high the crowder should be manually controlled.*

3329 *Speeds for horizontally oriented crowders are typically in the 0.5- to 1-ft/s range for*
3330 *pre-anesthesia, sorting, and holding pools. Maximum crowder speed should not exceed 2 ft/s*
3331 *and should be adjustable.*

3332 Crowders are often controlled by a variable frequency drive (VFD). VFDs allow for
3333 crowder travel speed to be slowly increased or decreased, which is needed to move the crowder
3334 to crowd, but not stress, adult fish in the holding pool, and it eliminates jerky crowder movement
3335 associated with a simple on-off switch. Crowder speeds are also sometimes controlled by a
3336 switch to toggle between fast and slow speeds. In all cases, the VFD should be programmed not
3337 to increase the crowder or rail speed beyond a maximum level.

3338 **7.5.6.4 Coverage**

3339 *Crowders should be able to cover (crowd) the entire holding pool and should not leave*
3340 *any areas where fish may escape the crowding process.*

3341 Being able to crowd the entire holding pool ensures that all fish can be removed from the
3342 pool and that no fish spends more time than necessary in the holding pool.

3343 **7.5.6.5 Fish entering the holding pool while crowding**

3344 *If the crowder cannot be removed from the holding pool, it is important that fish do not*
3345 *enter that portion of the holding pool located behind the crowder during crowding operations.*

3346 Fish should not be able to access the area behind the crowder where they could become
3347 trapped or injured or are allowed to perish.

3348 **7.5.7 Brails**

3349 Brails are porous panels that can be used to move fish vertically in a holding pool or fish
3350 lock. For large holding pools, they are often used in conjunction with a crowder to encourage
3351 fish to exit the holding pool.

3352 **7.5.7.1 Floor brails**

3353 The following criteria must be followed with regard to floor brails:

- 3354 · *Floor brails should be composed of screen material that is sized according to the life stage*
3355 *and species present to preclude injury or mortality from occurring to target and non-target*
3356 *fish species. Gap openings along the sides of the rail must not exceed 1 inch.*
- 3357 · *For adult salmonids, brails should have a maximum clear spacing between bars of*
3358 *0.875 inch. Gaps around the sides of crowder panels must not exceed 1 inch, and seals must*
3359 *be installed that cover all gaps. The side and bottom seals of the crowder panel must allow*
3360 *the crowder to move without binding and prevent fish from moving underneath the rail.*
- 3361 · *If juvenile salmonids (i.e., smolt-sized fish) or other small fish are expected to be caught in*
3362 *the holding pool, consideration should be given to including a separator system and juvenile*
3363 *sanctuary area as part of the rail system. Also, the maximum clear spacing between bars of*

3364 *the brail should be reduced to 0.25 inch, with side tolerances of no more than 0.375-inch*
3365 *opening or the openings sealed with a brush material.*

3366 **7.5.7.2 Material**

3367 *Brail panels must be constructed of non-corrosive material. The use of galvanized*
3368 *material should be avoided if possible, and otherwise be minimized. Panels may consist of fish*
3369 *screen material such as profile bar or perforated plate material; flat bars where the narrow edge*
3370 *of the bar is aligned with flow; or round columns of steel, aluminum, or durable plastic. All*
3371 *edges and surfaces exposed to fish must be rounded or ground smooth to the touch.*

3372 The galvanization process uses zinc, which can be toxic to fish (this is why non-corrosive
3373 materials for crowder panels should be used). During the crowding process, fish are extremely
3374 likely to come into direct contact with the crowder panels. To reduce the potential for fish to be
3375 descaled or injured when being crowded, all surfaces and edges that fish can contact need to
3376 ground smooth or rounded.

3377 **7.5.7.3 Slope**

3378 *The sides and the floor of the brail should be sloped toward the holding pool egress point*
3379 *to encourage adult fish to move off the brail.*

3380 **7.5.7.4 Lifting**

3381 *The brail should not be used to lift fish out of the water.*

3382 **7.5.7.5 Brail speed**

3383 *Brail speeds are typically in the 0.5- to 1-ft/s range for pre-anesthesia, sorting, and*
3384 *holding pools. Maximum brail speed should not exceed 2 ft/s and should be adjustable. The*
3385 *beginning of the brailing process can be automated, but at the end of the process when fish*
3386 *densities are high, the brail should be manually controlled.*

3387 **7.5.7.6 Fish lock brails**

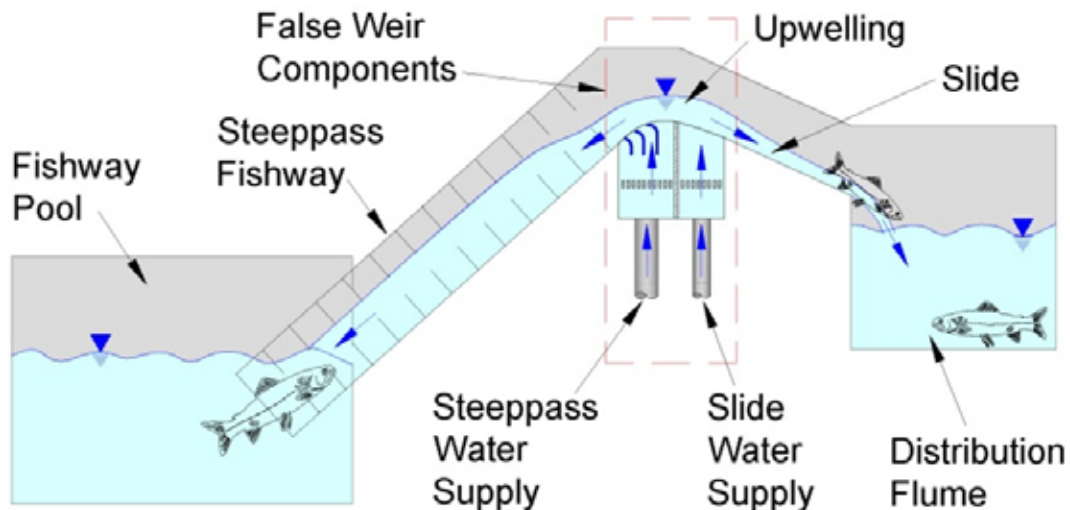
3388 *When floor brails are used in association with fish locks (Section 7.6.2), the floor brail*
3389 *hoist should be designed for both manual and automatic operation and should allow the brail to*
3390 *move at a maximum rate of 2.3 ft/s (both upward and downward). Also, the brail must be able to*
3391 *be operated at speeds that match changes in water surface elevation. Automated operation is*
3392 *allowed only when the water depth above the brail is 4 feet or more. At water depths less than*
3393 *4 feet, operation of the brail must be conducted manually.*

3394 These criteria are designed to minimize stressing fish during crowding between the floor
3395 brail and the point where water in the lock exits over an egress weir.

3396

7.5.8 False Weirs

3397 A false weir is a specialized floor diffuser used to introduce water at the top of a fishway
3398 or entrance to a distribution flume for the purpose of attracting and encouraging fish to
3399 volitionally move into a specific area (Figure 7-3). The device usually creates a strong upwelling
3400 flow that simulates flow cascading over a weir. Fish are attracted to the cascading flow and
3401 swim through the upwelling into the distribution flume. Care should be taken when locating a
3402 false weir to avoid light-to-dark transition at the location of the false weir (shadows) or
3403 movement by operator personnel around the false weir. These conditions could cause a fish to
3404 reject (not enter) the false weir.



3405

3406 Figure 7-3. Cross section of a false weir

3407 7.5.8.1 Depth

3408 *Water depth over the crest of the false weir should be at least 6 inches to facilitate fish*
3409 *egress from the holding pool.*

3410 7.5.8.2 Adjustability

3411 *The false weir and the downstream water level should have enough adjustability to*
3412 *backwater the false weir and create a streaming flow condition, rather than a plunging flow*
3413 *condition over the weir.*

3414 Incorporating this adjustability in the design of the false weir allows the operator to adjust
3415 conditions at the false weir to allow adult fish to swim through the weir, rather than having to
3416 leap at it to pass the weir. Care should be taken when raising the downstream water surface
3417 elevation to ensure this does not adversely affect hydraulic conditions in the trap facility further
3418 downstream of the false weir.

3419 **7.5.8.3 Fish entering a distribution flume**

3420 *In situations where fish are entering a distribution flume after passing over a false weir,*
3421 *the ability to change the amount of flow coming from the false weir should be rapid and easy to*
3422 *regulate the movement of fish over the weir.*

3423 Oftentimes it is necessary to control (i.e., meter) the number of fish passing through the
3424 false weir so operator personnel can identify and sort fish into various holding tanks. Having the
3425 ability to rapidly change the amount of flow coming from the false weir allows the operator some
3426 control over how many fish enter the false weir at time. Operator-controlled neoprene doors that
3427 open and close in front of, or vary the width of, the entrance to the false weir can be used when
3428 sorting fish into various holding tanks.

3429 **7.5.8.4 Edges**

3430 *Provisions, such as neoprene padding, should be installed around a false weir to protect*
3431 *fish that make an inaccurate leap at the weir from being injured.*

3432 **7.5.8.5 Gravity flow**

3433 *A gravity flow (i.e., not pumped) water supply should be used for false weirs and*
3434 *steep ladders to prevent fish from potentially rejecting the trap component due to the*
3435 *production of noise or vibration from a pump or motor.*

3436 **7.5.9 Distribution Flumes**

3437 **7.5.9.1 General**

3438 *A distribution flume (or pipe) must be used whenever fish are routed from one area to*
3439 *another.*

3440 Distribution flumes are used to convey fish to anesthetic tanks, recovery tanks,
3441 pre-transport holding tanks, fish ladders, and project forebays. They are also used to convey fish
3442 to various locations after they pass through false weirs.

3443 **7.5.9.2 Smoothness**

3444 *The flume must have smooth joints, sides, and bottom, with no sharp or abrupt edges and*
3445 *no abrupt vertical or horizontal bends.*

3446 **7.5.9.3 Wetted surfaces, water depth, and velocity**

3447 The following criteria must be followed with regard to wetted surfaces, water depth, and
3448 velocity:

- 3449 · *The flume must have continuously wetted surfaces.*
- 3450 · *For flumes less than 50 feet in length, water depth in the flume should be between 1 and*
3451 *3 inches, and water velocity should be between 6 and 8 ft/s.*

- 3452 · *For flumes that are longer than 50 feet, a closed pipe with open channel flow should be used*
3453 *for the entire length of the flume. The water depth in the pipe should be between 2 and*
3454 *4 inches (a depth of 4 inches is preferred), and water velocity should be greater than 8 ft/s,*
3455 *but less than 15 ft/s.*
3456 · *Site-specific adjustments to these values may be required.*

3457 The combination of low water depth and high velocity is intended to prevent adult fish
3458 from holding in the pipe or swimming upstream in the pipe. If the pipe is above ground,
3459 observation ports with removable covers should be provided so that conditions in the flume can
3460 be observed and the pipe can be accessed for maintenance and debris removal. If the pipe is
3461 located belowground, access ports should be provided for inspection and maintenance.

3462 **7.5.9.4 Outfalls**

3463 *When distribution flumes lead to holding tanks or raceways, care should be taken so that*
3464 *adults entering the tank do not hit the walls, floor, or end of the tank or collide (land on top of)*
3465 *with other fish.*

3466 *When a distribution flume is used to return adults to the river, the criteria for juvenile*
3467 *outfalls (Section 10.6.4) should be followed (i.e., the bypass flow must not impact the river*
3468 *bottom or other physical features at any stage of river flow, and the maximum bypass outfall*
3469 *impact velocity should be less than 25 ft/s).*

3470 **7.5.9.5 Bends**

3471 *Horizontal and vertical radii of curvature should be at least 5 times the width of the*
3472 *flume to minimize the risk of fish-strike injuries. A removable flume cover should be provided*
3473 *when flumes go through bends greater than 30 degrees in alignment.*

3474 Removable covers are necessary to prevent active fish from leaping out of the flume and
3475 allow personnel to inspect the flume for debris accumulation in the bend.

3476 **7.5.9.6 Size**

3477 *The minimum inside diameter of the distribution flume must be 15 inches for fish*
3478 *weighing 20 lb or less and 18 inches for fish weighing 20 lb or more.*

3479 *The minimum sidewall height of a distribution flume is 24 inches.*

3480 This height is in addition to the radius of the flume. For example, the minimum total
3481 height of a 15-inch diameter flume would be 31.5 inches (24 inches plus half of the diameter at
3482 7.5 inches), as measured from the invert of the flume.

3483 **7.5.9.7 Length**

3484 *Distribution flumes should be as short as possible.*

3485 **7.5.9.8 Flume structure**

3486 *Overhead structures that are part of the flume, such as overhead bracing to stiffen the*
3487 *walls of the flume or gate operation arms, should be eliminated if possible, or minimized. If*
3488 *overhead structures are necessary, they should be located above the top of the flume sidewalls or*
3489 *30 inches above the invert of the flume, whichever is greater.*

3490 **7.5.10 Anesthetic Recovery Pools**

3491 The following criteria must be followed with regard to anesthetic recovery pools:

- 3492 · *Anesthetized fish must be routed to a recovery pool to allow the fish to be monitored prior to*
3493 *release to ensure they have fully recovered from the anesthesia.*
- 3494 · *Fish that are recovering from anesthesia must not be routed directly back to the river where*
3495 *unobserved mortality may occur.*
- 3496 · *Recovery pool inflow must satisfy the water quality guidelines specified in Section 7.5.5.*
- 3497 · *Recovery pool hydraulic conditions must not result in partially or fully anesthetized fish*
3498 *being impinged on an outflow grating or any other hazardous area.*
- 3499 · *A recovery pool must allow fully recovered fish to volitionally exit the pool.*
- 3500 · *The recovery pool should have a brail or crowder system to force fish from the recovery pool*
3501 *if necessary.*

3502 Often, fish require time to recover from effects of anesthetic. Anesthetized fish released
3503 directly to an uncontrolled environment (i.e., directly back to the river or into a ladder) often fail
3504 to orient themselves upright and sometimes sink to the bottom where they suffocate or be swept
3505 downstream. It is important to provide fish recovering from anesthetic with a safe recovery area
3506 where they can be monitored by personnel. If a fish appears to be struggling or appears
3507 distressed, it may be necessary to retrieve the fish and revive it. The ability of a fish to
3508 volitionally exit the recovery pool is an indication that the fish has recovered sufficiently from
3509 the anesthetic.

3510 **7.6 Lifting Devices**

3511 Section 7.6 provides criteria and guidelines that apply to fish lifting devices.

3512 **7.6.1 Fish Lifts and Hopper Passage Systems**

3513 A fish lift is a mechanical system that utilizes a hopper and hoist to allow fish to be
3514 trapped at one elevation and raised to a higher elevation. Once raised to the higher elevation,
3515 fish can be loaded into a transport tank or truck for release at a remote location, routed to a
3516 monitoring and sorting facility, or released above a dam directly into the forebay.

3517 **7.6.1.1 Maximum hopper loading densities**

3518 *The hopper water volumes should be greater than or equal to 0.15 ft³/lb of fish estimated*
3519 *to occur at the maximum fish load. When large fish (fish ranging from 30 to 40 lb in weight) are*
3520 *being transported, the poundage being transported should be reduced by 50% (Bell 1991).*

3521 Hopper loading densities are designed to ensure that a sufficient volume of water is
3522 available to fish to be raised safely. Normally, the size of the hopper and transport tank loading
3523 match, such that a full hopper volume equals a full transport tank volume. The density of fish
3524 being held when water temperatures become elevated is a concern that needs to be considered.
3525 Bell (1991) recommends that the poundage of fish being transported in tanks be reduced by 10%
3526 for each degree of water temperature above 60°F.

3527 **7.6.1.2 Hopper freeboard**

3528 *The distance from the water surface in the hopper to the top of hopper bucket should be*
3529 *greater than the water depth within the hopper.*

3530 This is to reduce the risk of fish jumping out of the hopper during lifting operations.

3531 **7.6.1.3 Sump**

3532 *When a trap design includes a hopper sump into which the hopper is lowered during*
3533 *trapping, side clearances between the hopper and sump sidewalls should not exceed 1 inch to*
3534 *minimize access to the area below the hopper. Flexible side seals or brushes must be used to*
3535 *ensure that fish do not pass below the hopper.*

3536 **7.6.1.4 Fish hopper egress opening**

3537 *The fish egress opening from the hopper into the transport tank must have a minimum*
3538 *horizontal cross-sectional area of 3 square feet and a smooth transition to minimize the potential*
3539 *for fish injury.*

3540 **7.6.1.5 Safeguarding fish**

3541 *Fail-safe measures must be provided to prevent fish entering the holding pool area from*
3542 *accessing the area occupied by the hopper before the hopper is lowered into position. The*
3543 *interior surfaces of the hopper must be smooth to eliminate fish injuries.*

3544 **7.6.2 Fish Lock**

3545 A fish lock is a mechanical-hydraulic system that utilizes a water chamber or tower to
3546 raise fish from one elevation to another. It allows fish that are collected (trapped) at a lower
3547 elevation to be raised to a higher elevation by increasing the water level in the chamber or tower
3548 until it reaches a predetermined elevation where fish can be released. The fish can be brailed
3549 (i.e., crowded) to the higher elevation and then loaded into a transport truck for release at a
3550 remote location, routed to a monitoring and sorting facility, or released directly above a dam into
3551 the forebay (Clay 1995).

3552 Section 7.6.2.1 outlines the process for routing fish from a holding pool to the forebay or
3553 transport vehicle using a fish lock.

3554 **7.6.2.1 Holding pool crowding**

3555 The following criteria and guidelines must be followed with regard to holding pool
3556 crowding:

- 3557 · *Fish are crowded into the lock; the crowder must meet up with the entrance to the lock so*
3558 *that no fish can become trapped or crushed between the crowder and the lift structure or*
3559 *closure gate.*
- 3560 · *When the closure gate to the fish lock chamber is shut it must create a uniform surface with*
3561 *the interior of the lock so that the brail can pass the gate without creating excessive gaps that*
3562 *could allow fish to get past the brail.*
 - 3563 – The closure gate is the gate that seals the lock chamber from the holding pool.
- 3564 · *Flow to fill the lock must be introduced into the lock through floor diffusers below the floor*
3565 *brail.*
 - 3566 – As the water level rises within the lock, it will ultimately reach an equilibrium elevation
3567 with a control weir or false weir.
- 3568 · *The floor brail should be raised only after the water surface elevation in the lock is at an*
3569 *equilibrium with the control weir or false weir. If the brail is being operated while the fish*
3570 *lock is being filled, the speed of the brail should not exceed the rate of change in water*
3571 *surface elevation. The brail should be greater than 4 feet from the water surface until the*
3572 *water level reaches equilibrium with the control or false weir. The brail should not be used*
3573 *to lift fish out of the water (Section 7.5.7.4).*
 - 3574 – Speeds for brails (vertically oriented crowders) are typically in the 0.5- to 1-ft/s range for
3575 pre-anesthesia, sorting, and holding pools, but can range up to 2.3 ft/s for vertical fish
3576 locks.
- 3577 · *Fish should exit the lock via a false weir or through the overflow water draining over the*
3578 *control weir.*
 - 3579 – Fish and water that pass over the control weir or false weir can be routed using a
3580 distribution flume to other destinations, including an anesthetic tank, sorting or holding
3581 pools, or a transportation vehicle.
 - 3582 – Floor dewatering screens in the distribution flume can be used to drain off excess flow
3583 just before fish are delivered to anesthetic tanks, holding pools, or transportation vehicles.

3584 **7.6.2.2 Lock inflow chamber**

3585 *The lock inflow chamber located below the lowest-floor brail level must be of sufficient*
3586 *depth and volume (Section 5.5.3.5) to limit turbulence into the fish holding zone when lock inflow*
3587 *is introduced. The inflow sump should be designed so that flow upwells uniformly through*
3588 *add-in floor diffusers (Section 5.3.7; Bell 1991).*

3589 Properly designed lock inflow chambers will limit turbulence and unstable hydraulic
3590 conditions within the lock that may agitate fish.

3591

7.7 Single Holding Pool Traps

3592

Single pool traps are often used in tandem with intermittent exclusion barriers (Figure 6-5) for broodstock collection from small streams. These trapping systems are used to collect, sort, and load adult fish. Key criteria for single holding pool traps are as follows:

3593

3594

3595

• *The trap holding pool water volume must be designed according to Section 5.5.3.5 to achieve stable interior hydraulic conditions and minimize jumping of trapped fish.*

3596

3597

• *Intakes must conform to Section 5.3.2.*

3598

• *Sidewall freeboard should be a minimum of 4 feet above the trap pool water surface at high design streamflow.*

3599

3600

• *The trap holding pool interior surfaces must be smooth to reduce the potential for fish injury.*

3601

• *A description of the proposed means of removing fish from the trapping pool and loading them onto a transport truck must be submitted to NMFS for approval as part of the ESA incidental take permit application.*

3602

3603

3604

7.8 Upstream Transportation Criteria

3605

Section 7.8 provides criteria and guidelines that are applicable to truck transportation equipment and facilities.

3606

3607

7.8.1 Maximum Transport Tank Loading Densities

3608

Transport tank loading water volumes should be greater than or equal to 0.15 ft³/lb of fish at the maximum fish loading density to provide a sufficient volume of water for fish safety. When large fish (fish ranging from 30 to 40 lb in weight) are being transported, the poundage being transported should be reduced by 50% (Bell 1991).

3609

3610

3611

3612

These loading densities are to ensure that a sufficient volume of water is available in the tank for fish to be transported safely. Normally, the size of the hopper and transport tank loading match, such that a full hopper volume equals a full transport tank volume. The density of fish being held when water temperatures become elevated is a concern that needs to be considered. Bell (1991) recommends that the poundage of fish being transported in tanks be reduced by 10% for each degree of water temperature above 60°F.

3613

3614

3615

3616

3617

3618

7.8.2 Transport Tanks

3619

To minimize handling stress, truck transport tanks must be compatible with the hopper design. If an existing vehicle will be used, the hopper must be designed to be compatible with existing equipment. If the transport tank opening is larger than the tube or hopper opening, a cap or other device must be designed to prevent fish from jumping at the opening. Truck tanks for hauling adults must be closed systems, and the tanks must be kept full to prevent sloshing (Bell 1991).

3620

3621

3622

3623

3624

3625 **7.8.2.1 Fish transfer from hopper to tank**

3626 *The transfer of fish must be made water-to-water. The design of the hopper and*
3627 *transport tanks should allow for hopper water surface control to be transferred to the truck*
3628 *transport tank during loading so that water and fish do not plunge abruptly from the hopper into*
3629 *the fish transport tank.*

3630 **7.8.2.2 Transport tank egress**

3631 *The fish egress opening from the transport tank must have a minimum cross-sectional*
3632 *area of 2 square feet (Clay 1995). The bottom of the transport tank must be sloped (front to back*
3633 *and side to side) toward the release opening and have a smooth transition that minimizes the*
3634 *potential for fish injury.*

3635 **7.8.2.3 Oxygen and temperature requirements**

3636 *Depending upon site-specific conditions, the transportation tank should have the*
3637 *capability to maintain dissolved oxygen levels between 6 and 7 parts per million. The*
3638 *transportation tank should also contain water chillers to maintain ambient water temperature.*

3639 **7.8.3 Release Location**

3640 *After being transported, fish must be released in a safe location with sufficient depth and*
3641 *good water quality.*

3642 The criteria and guidelines in Sections 7.8.3.1 through 7.8.3.6 apply to release locations.

3643 **7.8.3.1 Direct release from a transport tank**

3644 *Fish should not be dropped more than 6 feet during release. The receiving water must be*
3645 *at least 3 feet deep. The impact velocity of fish entering the receiving water should be less than*
3646 *25 ft/s.*

3647 **7.8.3.2 Release pipe from a transport tank**

3648 *For locations where release pipes are required, the minimum diameter for a release pipe*
3649 *is 24 inches (30 inches is preferred). The end of the release pipe should not be submerged. The*
3650 *release pipe elevation criteria, receiving water depth, and impact velocity are the same as for*
3651 *fish being released directly from a transport tank (Section 7.8.3.1).*

3652 Depending on how fish are released from the transport tank, the entrance to the release
3653 pipe may have to be larger (e.g., 36 inches), or a funnel or flume should be created that smoothly
3654 transitions from the release tank outlet to the release pipe. Care should be taken to minimize the
3655 possibility of a fish leaping out of the system during transfer from the tank to release pipe.

3656 **7.8.3.3 Release water**

3657 *Water should be supplied to the release pipe prior to fish being released and also used to*
3658 *flush the last fish out of the pipe.*

3659 **7.8.3.4 Water quality**

3660 *Water quality (i.e., water temperature and dissolved oxygen) at the release site should be*
3661 *representative of the general water conditions in the river in the vicinity of the release site.*

3662 **7.8.3.5 Water tempering**

3663 *NMFS recommends that fish should not be subjected to rapid temperature changes.*
3664 *Temperature differentials between the transport tank and release location should be no more*
3665 *than 2 degrees Celsius (°C). If tempering is required to meet this criterion, changes in*
3666 *temperature should not exceed 1°C every 2 minutes or 5°C per hour. Tempering may take*
3667 *longer when temperatures are further away from the optimal temperature for the target species*
3668 *and life stage.*

3669 *Changes in water temperature that occur too rapidly or are beyond the normal survival*
3670 *range of fish may cause thermal trauma (Post 1987). Mortality associated with rapid temperature*
3671 *changes may occur in the short term from loss of equilibrium (Bell 1991) and increased*
3672 *predation (Groot et al. 1995). Over longer time periods, thermal stress can act as an additive*
3673 *stressor and increase susceptibility to disease (Piper et al. 1982). Fish adapt more rapidly when*
3674 *the temperature change is nearer their thermal optimum than when the change is further away*
3675 *from that temperature (Schreck and Moyle 1990). Rapid changes in temperature have more*
3676 *significant negative effects at the upper end of a fish's temperature tolerance. As temperatures*
3677 *increase, fish are more active and have greater potential for self-inflicted injury, oxygen*
3678 *consumption is higher, and the saturation level of oxygen is lower, which increases the*
3679 *possibility of hypoxia (Murphy and Willis 1996).*

3680 **7.8.3.6 Release site egress**

3681 *The release site must provide direct and simple egress for fish into the river for continued*
3682 *migration upstream.*

3683

8 Stream Crossings

3684

8.1 Introduction

3685 Chapter 8 provides criteria and guidelines for the design of stream crossings to provide
3686 upstream and downstream movement of anadromous salmonids for all life stages of anadromous
3687 salmonids present at a site. These criteria and guidelines apply to bridges, culverts, and fords.
3688 For the purpose of fish passage, the distinction between a bridge, culvert, and low water crossing
3689 (also referred to as a ford) is not as important as the effect the structure has on the form and
3690 function of the stream.

3691 In addition to providing fish passage, any stream crossing design should include
3692 consideration for maintaining the ecological function of the stream, passing woody debris, flood
3693 flows and sediment, and other species that may be present at the site. The design team should be
3694 in close contact with biologists and engineers familiar with the site to assess potential impacts on
3695 species and life stages present and site geomorphology.

3696 The criteria and guidelines presented in this chapter are general in nature. There may be
3697 cases where site constraints or unusual circumstances dictate a modification to one or more of
3698 these design elements. Also, where there is an opportunity to protect salmonids, additional
3699 site-specific criteria may be appropriate. Variances will be considered by NMFS on a
3700 project-specific basis. It is the responsibility of the applicant to formally request and provide
3701 compelling evidence in support of any modification of a guideline or criterion contained in this
3702 chapter. Requests must be submitted for approval early in the design process, well in advance of
3703 a proposed ESA consultation.

8.2 Preferred Alternatives for New, Replacement, or Retrofitted Stream Crossings

3706 Bridges, culverts, and fords have the potential to pass fish, but some may facilitate
3707 passage better at a particular site. Based on the biological significance and ecological risk of a
3708 particular site, NMFS may require that a specific design alternative be developed that allows
3709 normative physical processes within the stream-floodplain corridor to be maintained by
3710 promoting natural sediment transport patterns for the reach, providing unaltered fluvial debris
3711 movement, and restoring or maintaining functional longitudinal continuity and connectivity of
3712 the stream-floodplain system. NMFS considers and prioritizes the following alternatives and
3713 types of structures in the order shown:

- 3714 1. No new crossing structure: Realign the road to avoid crossing the stream.
- 3715 2. Removal: Completely remove the crossing and restore the stream channel.
- 3716 3. Bridge: Span the historically active floodplain or channel migration zone. This allows for
3717 long-term dynamic channel stability.

- 3718 4. Stream Simulation Design (SSD): Construct the following structures using approved SSD
3719 methodologies:
3720 a. Bridge – Clear span
3721 b. Bridge – With piers
3722 c. Culvert
3723 i. Bottomless arch
3724 ii. Round pipe
3725 iii. Squash pipe
3726 d. Modified SSD – This requires NMFS approval and a waiver.
3727 5. Ford
3728 6. Hydraulic design: This method is approved only when NMFS determines that alternatives 1
3729 through 5 (above) are unattainable. Hydraulic design styles include backwatered, embedded,
3730 baffled, and non-embedded culverts and culverts designed with a fishway.

3731 **8.3 Spawning**

3732 *If a segment of stream channel where a crossing is proposed is in an active salmonid*
3733 *spawning area, then only full span bridges using stream simulation are acceptable.*

3734 It is important to maintain the bed at grade and substrate material in as natural a condition
3735 as possible. This supports population productivity by reducing scour of spawning redds and
3736 through increased connectivity of the channel with the floodplain.

3737 **8.4 Alignment**

3738 *All stream crossing structures are aligned with the longitudinal axis of the stream*
3739 *channel, with no abrupt changes in flow direction upstream or downstream of the crossing.*

3740 Aligning the crossing structure so there are no abrupt changes in flow direction can often
3741 be accommodated by changing the road alignment or slightly elongating the culvert. Excessively
3742 elongating the culvert will be weighed against a better crossing alignment and modifying
3743 transition sections upstream and downstream of the crossing.

3744 **8.5 Crossing Length**

3745 *The length for a culvert crossing should be less than 150 feet. If the length is greater*
3746 *than 150 feet, a bridge is required.*

3747 Stream crossings that are long compared to streambed width can reduce a stream's
3748 natural sinuosity and result in sediment transport problems even if the channel slope remains
3749 constant. These problems should be anticipated and mitigated in the project design.

3750 **8.6 Flood Capacity**

3751 *All culvert stream crossings, regardless of the design option used, shall be designed to*
3752 *withstand the 100-year peak flood flow without failure of the crossing. Stream crossings located*

3753 *in areas where there is significant risk of plugging by flood-borne debris should be designed to*
3754 *pass the 100-year peak flood with a minimum of 1 foot of freeboard.*

3755 The hydraulic capacity design of all crossings must consider and compensate for debris
3756 loading and deposition within the crossing.

3757 **8.7 Embedded Pipe Design**

3758 **8.7.1 LSSS Method**

3759 The Low Slope Stream Simulation (LSSS) method replaces the following embedded pipe
3760 design methodologies that have been applied across the WCR: Active Channel Method
3761 (NMFS 2001; CDFG 2005); Embedded Pipe Method (NMFS 2011); and No-Slope Method
3762 (WDFW 2013). These superseded methods required the pipe be set at a 0% slope, or “no-slope.”
3763 Price (2010) concluded that as many as 45% of the designs using a no-slope design approach
3764 failed to meet fish passage criteria based on post-construction evaluations.

3765 The LSSS is a slightly modified version of the no-slope design methodology (Love and
3766 Bates 2009). The LSSS method recommends the pipe be set at the same average slope as the
3767 adjacent upstream and downstream channels, and it reduces the length of the pipe to a maximum
3768 of 75 feet. The LSSS method rectifies some of the shortcomings observed in no-slope designs.

3769 **8.7.2 Specific Criteria and Guidelines – LSSS Method**

3770 The LSSS method is a simplified design that is intended to size a culvert sufficiently
3771 large and embedded deep enough into the channel to allow the natural movement of bedload and
3772 formation of a stable bed inside the culvert. Determination of the high and low fish passage
3773 design flows, water velocity, and water depth is not required for this method since the stream
3774 hydraulic characteristics within the culvert are intended to mimic the stream conditions upstream
3775 and downstream of the crossing.

3776 The following design elements must be included in the design of culverts when using the
3777 LSSS Method, and the criteria for each design element must be met:

- 3778 • Culvert width: *The minimum culvert width shall be equal to, or greater than, 1.5 times the*
3779 *active channel width.*
- 3780 • Culvert diameter: *Minimum diameter is 6 feet.*
- 3781 • Maximum stream slope: *LSSS is restricted to average stream slopes of 3% or less.*
- 3782 • Culvert slope: *Culvert slope is set at a slope equal to the average slope.*
- 3783 • Bed slope: *The slope of the bed in the culvert must replicate the natural upstream and*
3784 *downstream stream gradient in the vicinity of the road crossing.*
- 3785 • Invert depth: *Inlet and outlet inverts of the culvert are set a minimum of 3 feet below the*
3786 *streambed.*
- 3787 • Embedment: *The inlet and outlet invert shall be buried into the streambed not less than 30%*
3788 *of the culvert height at the outlet and not more than 50% of the culvert height at the inlet.*
- 3789 • Fill materials: *Fill materials should be composed of natural or simulated streambed material.*

3790

8.8 Streambed Simulation Design Method

3791

8.8.1 Description and Purpose – SSD Method

3792

3793

3794

3795

3796

3797

3798

3799

3800

The SSD method is intended to mimic the natural stream processes through a stream crossing and produce a design where fish passage, sediment transport, and flood and debris conveyance function as they would in a natural channel. Determining high and low fish passage design flows, water velocity, and water depth are not required for SSD because the stream hydraulic characteristics within the crossing are designed to mimic stream conditions upstream and downstream of the crossing. Also, crossings developed using SSD contain a streambed mixture that is similar to the adjacent stream channel, but do require additional information on hydrology and geomorphology (e.g., the topography of the stream channel) and a higher level of engineering expertise compared to the LSSS method.

3801

8.8.2 Specific Criteria and Guidelines – SSD Method

3802

The following subsections provide specific design criteria and guidelines for the SSD.

3803

8.8.2.1 Culvert width

3804

The minimum crossing span is 1.5 times the bankfull width.

3805

8.8.2.2 Streambed slope

3806

3807

3808

3809

The slope of the reconstructed streambed within the crossing should not exceed 1.25 times the average slope of the adjacent stream from approximately 10 channel widths upstream and downstream of the crossing. In cases where the crossing requires grade control to maintain streambed elevation and form, a bridge is recommended.

3810

8.8.2.3 Culvert slope

3811

3812

When a culvert is used, the culvert slope shall approximate the slope of the stream through the reach in which it is being placed.

3813

8.8.2.4 Channel vertical clearance

3814

3815

The minimum vertical clearance between the crossing bed and the culvert ceiling or bridge deck should be no less than 6 feet to allow access for debris removal.

3816

8.8.2.5 Embedment

3817

3818

3819

3820

Inverts, abutments, footings, or foundations should be designed for the largest anticipated scour depth. Minimum embedment depth of inverts, footings, and abutments is 3 feet. Pipe inverts (inlet and outlet) shall be buried into the streambed not less than 30% and not more than 50% of the culvert height.

3821 **8.8.2.6 Fill materials**

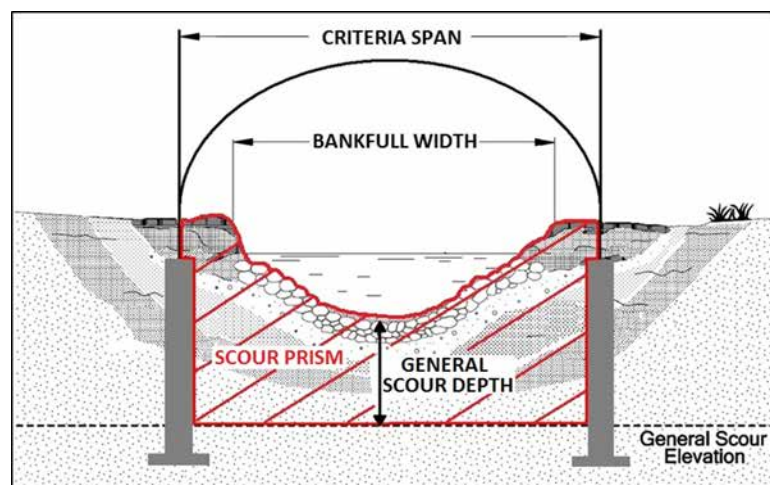
3822 *Fill materials should be composed of materials of similar size composition to natural bed*
3823 *materials that form the natural stream channels adjacent to the road crossing.*

3824 The designer must demonstrate to NMFS that the streambed of the crossing will be stable
3825 over time. This can be accomplished by assessing hydraulic conditions through the passage
3826 corridor over the range of fish passage design flow, and whether a sufficient amount of bed
3827 material will be transported through the crossing to maintain the integrity of the streambed over
3828 time. NMFS may approve incorporating large fill material into the design to maintain grade and
3829 provide resting areas for migratory fish.

3830 **8.8.2.7 Scour prism**

3831 *Maintain the scour prism as a clear, unobstructed opening (i.e., free of any embankment*
3832 *fill, bed retention sills, scour countermeasure, or structural material to include abutments,*
3833 *footings, and culvert inverts).*

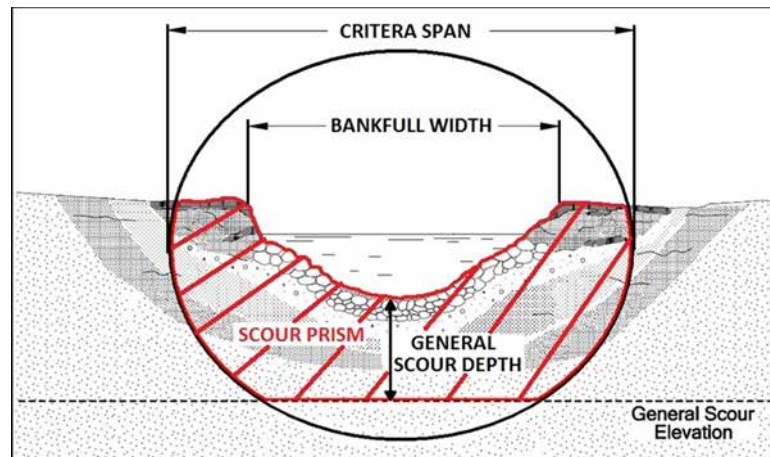
3834 The scour prism concept for a bottomless arch culvert and an elliptical culvert are
3835 illustrated in Figure 8-1. No structural components, scour, or stream stability countermeasures
3836 may be applied within the scour prism. The scour prism is a cross-sectional area of the stream
3837 channel through the road crossing. The horizontal component is defined as 1.5 times the
3838 bankfull width, and the vertical component is defined as the required embedment depth. Rock
3839 band designs (Barnard 2013) are not considered scour countermeasures and are allowed within
3840 the scour prism.



3841

3842

(a) Scour prism in bottomless arch culvert



3843

3844

(b) Scour prism in elliptical culvert

3845

Figure 8-1. Illustration of scour prism concept

3846

8.9 Hydraulic Designs

3847

8.9.1 Description and Purpose – HDM

3848

3849

3850

3851

3852

3853

3854

3855

3856

The Hydraulic Design Method (HDM) is a design process that matches the hydraulic performance of a culvert with the swimming abilities of a target species and age class of fish. The HDM requires hydrologic data analysis; open channel flow hydraulic calculations; determinations of the high and low fish passage design flows, water velocity, and water depth; and information on the swimming ability and behavior of the target fish species and age classes. The HDM can be applied to the design of new and replacement culverts. It can also be used to evaluate the effectiveness of retrofits to existing culverts where hydraulic controls may be necessary to provide resting pools, concentrate low flows, prevent erosion of streambeds or banks, and allow passage of bedload material.

3857

3858

3859

3860

The drawbacks of using HDM are that it targets specific fish species and does not account for the ecosystem requirements of non-target species, and there are significant errors associated with estimating hydrologic parameters and fish swimming speeds that must be resolved by making conservative assumptions during the design process.

3861

8.9.2 Specific Criteria and Guidelines – HDM

3862

The following subsections provide specific design criteria and guidelines for the HDM.

3863

8.9.2.1 High fish passage design flow

3864

3865

3866

The high design flow is the 1% annual exceedance. If flow duration data or methods necessary to compute the data are not available, then 50% of the 2-year flood recurrence interval flow may be used as an alternative.

3867 **8.9.2.2 Low fish passage design flow**

3868 *For adults, if flow duration data are available or can be synthesized, the 50% annual*
3869 *exceedance flow or 3 ft³/s, whichever is greater, is used. For juveniles, the 95% annual*
3870 *exceedance flow or 1 ft³/s, whichever is greater, is used.*

3871 The low design flow for fish passage is used to determine the minimum depth of water
3872 within a culvert. Hydraulic controls may be required to maintain depth at low flows. Minimum
3873 flow for adults and juveniles is calculated.

3874 **8.9.2.3 Minimum water depth**

3875 *Minimum water depth at the low fish passage design flow should be: 1 foot for adult*
3876 *steelhead and Chinook, coho, and sockeye salmon; 0.75 foot for pink and chum salmon; and*
3877 *0.5 foot for all species of juvenile salmon as measured in the centerline of the culvert. The*
3878 *minimum depth within the culvert barrel is calculated at fish passage design low flow.*

3879 **8.9.2.4 Maximum hydraulic drop**

3880 *Hydraulic drops at, or adjacent to, the inlet, inside the culvert, or at the outlet are not*
3881 *allowed.*

3882 **8.9.2.5 Minimum culvert width**

3883 *The minimum culvert width is 6 feet.*

3884 **8.9.2.6 Minimum vertical clearance**

3885 *The minimum vertical clearance between the culvert bed and the inside soffit of the*
3886 *culvert is 6 feet.*

3887 This clearance provides access for debris removal. Smaller vertical clearances may be
3888 used if a sufficient inspection and maintenance plan is provided with the design that ensures the
3889 culvert will be free of debris during the fish passage season.

3890 **8.9.2.7 Embedment**

3891 *The bottom of the culvert shall be buried into the streambed a minimum of 20% of the*
3892 *height of the culvert below the elevation of the tailwater control point downstream of the culvert,*
3893 *or 1 foot, whichever is greater.*

3894 **8.9.2.8 Maximum culvert slope**

3895 *Maximum slope shall not exceed 0.5%.*

3896 **8.9.2.9 Fish passage design velocity**

3897 *Maximum velocity at the high fish passage design flow is 1 ft/s.*

3898

8.10 Retrofitting Culverts

3899 Culverts that impede passage may be improved through retrofitting efforts. Retrofitting
3900 is not a long-term passage solution, but it may be authorized for projects where culverts will not
3901 be removed or replaced in the immediate future. Fish passage may be improved using gradient
3902 control weirs upstream or downstream of the culvert; interior baffles or weirs; or, in some cases,
3903 fish ladders. However, these retrofit actions are temporary and are not viewed as fish passage
3904 solutions that lead to the recovery of ESA-listed species.

3905

8.10.1 Hydraulic controls

3906 *A change in water surface elevation of up to 1 foot through a culvert is acceptable for*
3907 *retrofitting culverts designed to pass adult salmonids, provided water depth and velocity in the*
3908 *culvert meet other hydraulic guidelines. A jump pool at the culvert outlet must be provided that*
3909 *is at least 1.5 times the jump height, or a minimum of 2 feet deep, whichever is deeper.*

3910 Hydraulic controls in the channel upstream and downstream of a culvert can be used to
3911 maintain a continuous low flow path through a culvert and stream reach. They can be used to
3912 facilitate fish passage by establishing the following desirable conditions: control depth and water
3913 velocity within a culvert, concentrate low flows, provide resting pools upstream and downstream
3914 of a culvert, and prevent erosion of bed and banks.

3915

8.10.2 Backwatering

3916 *Retrofit designs maximize backwatering of the culvert to the maximum extent possible. If*
3917 *baffles are installed, the downstream hydraulic control should backwater the first two baffles at*
3918 *the culvert outlet.*

3919

8.10.3 Baffles

3920 Baffles may provide incremental fish passage improvement in culverts with excess
3921 hydraulic capacity that cannot be made passable by other means but may also increase clogging
3922 and debris accumulation within the culvert and require special design considerations specific to
3923 the baffle type. Culverts that are too long or too high in gradient require resting pools or other
3924 forms of velocity refuge spaced at increments along the culvert length. Baffles must only be
3925 installed after approval by NMFS on a site-specific basis, and typically are only approved if the
3926 baffles will be used on an interim basis until a permanent passage solution is implemented. In
3927 addition, if baffles are installed, a suitable inspection and maintenance plan must be provided.
3928 For example, the plan could call for the baffles to be inspected prior to each passage season and
3929 after any flood event greater than a 2-year exceedance flow and subsequent debris removal after
3930 the inspection, if needed. The baffle design configuration must demonstrate that it can provide
3931 successful fish passage over the range of fish passage design flows. If an inspection and
3932 maintenance plan is implemented and fish passage standards are met, NMFS may approve the
3933 use of baffles in the permanent installation.

3934 Retrofitting culverts can involve the following baffle alternatives and structure types.
3935 NMFS prefers to retrofit culverts using baffles or internal weirs over fishways.

3936 Baffled culverts and internal weirs should only be considered when all other retrofit
3937 alternatives are deemed infeasible. This is because many baffle designs are untested for
3938 anadromous salmonid passage, and baffles reduce the hydraulic capacity of culverts. NMFS
3939 may approve baffled culverts on a site-specific basis if compelling evidence of successful
3940 passage at other sites utilizing a similar design is provided and a suitable monitoring and
3941 maintenance plan is developed and followed.

3942 Fishways (Section 4 and Section 10) are generally not recommended for retrofitting
3943 culverts, but they may be useful for situations. Fishways require a specialized, site-specific
3944 design for each installation for which NMFS must be contacted prior to ESA consultation.

3945 **8.11 Additional Design Criteria for Road Crossings**

3946 The following subsections provide the additional design criteria for road crossings.

3947 **8.11.1 Trash Racks and Livestock Fences**

3948 *Trash racks and livestock fences should not be allowed near culvert inlets because debris*
3949 *accumulations on the structures may severely restrict fish passage and potentially may injure*
3950 *fish.*

3951 Where fencing cannot be avoided, it should be removed during adult salmon upstream
3952 migration periods. Otherwise, a minimum of 9 inches of clear spacing between pickets should
3953 be provided up to the high flow water surface. Timely clearing of debris is also important, even
3954 if flow is getting around the fencing. Cattle fences that rise with increasing flow are highly
3955 recommended.

3956 Where trash racks cannot be avoided, the rack must only be installed above the water
3957 surface level indicated by bankfull flow. Clear spacing between the vertical components of the
3958 trash rack should be a minimum of 9 inches. If trash racks are used, a long-term maintenance
3959 plan must be provided along with the design, describing how the timely clearing of debris will be
3960 addressed.

3961 **8.11.2 Lighting**

3962 *Natural or artificial supplemental lighting should be provided in new and replacement*
3963 *culverts that are more than 150 feet in length. Where supplemental lighting is required, the*
3964 *spacing between light sources shall not exceed 75 feet.*

3965 Research indicates that different species of anadromous salmonids respond differently to
3966 lighting conditions (USACE 1976). NMFS should be contacted if a culvert greater than 150 feet
3967 in length is under consideration.

3968 **8.11.3 In-Stream Work Windows**

3969 *NMFS has established in-stream work windows for each watershed that correspond to*
3970 *times of the year when salmonids are not present. Work in the active stream channel must be*
3971 *performed within the work window. Temporary crossings, placed in salmonid streams for water*

3972 *diversion during construction activities, should meet all of the guidelines in this document.*
3973 *However, if it can be shown that the location of a temporary crossing in the stream network is*
3974 *not a fish passage concern at the time of the project, then the construction activity only needs to*
3975 *minimize erosion, sediment delivery, and impacts to surrounding riparian vegetation.*

3976 NMFS and state resource agencies establish instream work windows for major
3977 watersheds.

3978 **8.11.4 Installation**

3979 *Culverts shall only be installed when a site is de-watered and for which sediment control*
3980 *and flow routing plans have been developed, reviewed, and are acceptable to NMFS. Upon*
3981 *completion of construction, the work area and riparian corridor shall be fully restored with a*
3982 *mix of native, locally adapted, riparian vegetation. Use of species that grow extensive root*
3983 *networks quickly should be emphasized. Sterile, non-native hybrids may be used for erosion*
3984 *control in the short term if planted in conjunction with native species.*

3985 **8.11.5 Construction Disturbances**

3986 *Disturbances to the installation site during construction should be minimized, and the*
3987 *construction activity should not adversely impact fish migration or spawning. If salmon are*
3988 *likely to be present, fish clearing or salvage operations should be conducted by qualified*
3989 *personnel prior to construction. If the fish are listed as threatened or endangered under the*
3990 *federal or state ESA, NMFS should be consulted prior to initiating salvage operations. During*
3991 *salvage, care should be taken to ensure fish are not chased under banks or logs that will be*
3992 *removed or dislocated by construction, and stranded fish must be returned to a suitable location*
3993 *in a nearby stream by a method that does not require handling of the fish and as specified in the*
3994 *ESA take permit, if applicable. Construction disturbance to the riparian area must be*
3995 *minimized, and the activity must not adversely impact fish migration or spawning.*

3996 **8.11.6 Pumps**

3997 *If pumps are used to temporarily divert a stream to facilitate construction, an acceptable*
3998 *fish screen must be used to prevent entrainment or impingement of small fish (Section 10.7).*

3999 **8.11.7 Wastewater**

4000 *Unacceptable wastewater associated with project activities shall be disposed of off site in*
4001 *a location that will not drain directly into any stream channel.*

4002 **8.11.8 Other Hydraulic Considerations**

4003 *Water surface elevations in the stream reach must exhibit gradual flow transitions, both*
4004 *upstream and downstream of the road crossing. Abrupt changes in water surface and velocity*
4005 *must be avoided, with no hydraulic jumps, turbulence, or drawdown at the entrance. A*
4006 *continuous low flow channel must be maintained throughout the stream reach.*

4007

8.11.9 Multiple Culverts

4008 *Retrofitting multiple barrel culverts with baffles in one of the barrels may be sufficient as*
4009 *long as low flow channel continuity is maintained and the culvert with baffles is reachable by*
4010 *fish at low streamflow.*

4011 8.11.10 Post-Construction Evaluation and Long-Term Maintenance and Assessment

4012 *A post-construction evaluation must be conducted to ensure the intended results of the*
4013 *design are accomplished and that mistakes are not repeated elsewhere. The post-construction*
4014 *evaluation consists of the following three elements:*

- 4015 1. *Verify the culvert is installed in accordance with proper design and construction procedures.*
- 4016 2. *Measure hydraulic conditions to ensure these guidelines are met.*
- 4017 3. *Perform a biological assessment to confirm the hydraulic conditions are resulting in*
4018 *successful fish passage.*

4019 NMFS may assist in developing an evaluation plan to fit site-specific conditions and
4020 species. The goal of the evaluation plan is to generate feedback about techniques that are
4021 working well as well as those requiring future modification. The evaluations are not intended to
4022 cause extensive retrofits of a project unless the as-built installation does not conform to the
4023 design guidelines, or an obvious fish passage problem persists. Over time, NMFS anticipates
4024 that the second and third elements of these evaluations will be abbreviated as clear trends in the
4025 data emerge.

4026 *All culverts should be inspected at least once annually to ensure proper functioning, any*
4027 *stream crossing failures or deficiencies discovered should be corrected promptly, a summary*
4028 *report of the inspection and corrections should be completed and submitted to the resource*
4029 *agencies. A less frequent reporting schedule may be agreed upon for proven stream crossings.*

4030 Any physical structure will continue to serve its intended use only if it is properly
4031 maintained. During the storm season, timely inspection and removal of debris is necessary for
4032 culverts to continue to move water, fish, sediment, and debris.

4033

9 Grade Control Structures

4034 The guidance in these chapters applies to projects located in Washington, Oregon, and
4035 Idaho over the range of anadromous salmonid habitat. Given the significantly different
4036 hydrologic conditions and species-specific management considerations, projects in California
4037 should continue to refer to *Guidelines for Salmonid Passage at Stream Crossings* (NMFS 2001).

4038

9.1 Introduction

4039 Chapter 9 provides criteria and guidelines for grade control fishways (GCFs). GCFs are
4040 structures that control the grade and longitudinal profile of rivers, streams, and other migratory
4041 channels, while simultaneously providing fish passage. There are two categories of GCFs: 1)
4042 channel-spanning, which are discussed in this chapter; and 2) structures in bifurcated channels,
4043 which are discussed in Section 5.10.⁷

4044 This chapter discusses four types of channel-spanning GCFs:

- 4045 · NLFs
- 4046 · Rigid weirs
- 4047 · Boulder weirs
- 4048 · Channel-spanning technical fishways

4049 This chapter also describes the design challenges and associated variables germane to each type
4050 of GCF and provides insights into potential solutions to these challenges. GCF design guidelines
4051 are provided in Section 9.2. Specific criteria for designing GCFs are provided in Section 9.3.

4052 An extensive literature search was conducted to identify studies and regulatory guidance
4053 on GCFs. However, very few studies were found, and no regulatory guidance was available.
4054 NMFS has years of first-hand experience with GCFs and their impact on fish passage. NMFS
4055 believes it is important to provide criteria and guidelines based on what has been published and
4056 to supplement this information with its understanding of these fishways and the challenges of
4057 engineering channels that mimic the complexity of natural hydraulic conditions.

4058 This chapter covers design elements that NMFS feels are critical to the success of GFC
4059 projects, yet are not well represented, or are omitted, within the current body of literature directly
4060 addressing the design of GCFs. Some material presented in this chapter is derived from NMFS
4061 experience, for which there are no direct references. This chapter should not be viewed or

⁷ Bifurcated channels are designed to pass flow around a water-control structure that splits a river channel into two channels. Design guidelines and criteria for bifurcated channel structures that pass fish (including engineering approach, passage technology, hydraulic control, and attraction concerns) are described in Section 5.10, as they are synonymous with technical fishways.

4062 applied as a standalone set of instructions for designing GCFs; such application is beyond the
4063 scope of this document.

4064 **9.2 GCF Design Guidelines**

4065 Channel-spanning GCFs can be used for road crossings, reach restoration after dam
4066 removal and to improve habitat, and modifications to water diversion structures. As such, they
4067 are designed to pass the full streamflow through the channel. Because of this unique feature,
4068 channel-spanning GCFs must also efficiently pass sediment and debris through the design reach
4069 and meet entrance geometry requirements for fish passage. In addition, NMFS may require the
4070 design to connect the channel to its floodplain and meet channel geomorphology, roughness, and
4071 vegetation objectives.

4072 **9.2.1 Nature-Like Fishways**

4073 *Designers must select engineering methods for NLFs that have a track record of success*
4074 *at a similar scale, and within similar geomorphic conditions, as the proposed design.*

4075 NLFs are designed to simulate the hydraulic conditions of natural channels by mimicking
4076 their geomorphic form and complexity. NLFs can be engineered for target species by
4077 incorporating their natural passage windows and migration timing into the design. In addition,
4078 NLFs can be used to facilitate the passage of a wide assemblage of fish and other aquatic species
4079 over a range of flows.

4080 NLF designs rely on hydraulic engineering and mechanical construction methods to
4081 replicate critical natural stream processes and geomorphic form and function. Yet, these
4082 methods cannot fully accommodate the natural hydraulic forces compacting natural bed and bank
4083 material, often resulting in a constructed bed that is mobile and does not provide adequate fish
4084 passage conditions. As such, NMFS does not recommend strict adherence to hydraulic
4085 engineering and mechanical construction methods—including particle size selection,
4086 distribution, and placement of materials in a channel—for the design of NLFs. Based on NMFS’
4087 experience, a hydraulic analysis is necessary to ensure that the NLF design provides adequate
4088 fish passage conditions and ensures long-term stability of the fishway over the life of the project.

4089 A key attribute of NLFs is their potential to pass a greater diversity of fish species and
4090 life stages over a wider range of flows compared to technical fishways. However, the
4091 performance of NLF designs can vary widely among species, designs, and hydraulic conditions.
4092 Indeed, after reviewing a broad range of NLF applications, Castro-Santos (2011) concluded
4093 that NLF designs were not intrinsically superior to technical fishways (Chapter 5).

4094 It is critical for designers to select engineering methods that have a track record of
4095 success at the same scale—and within the same geomorphic conditions—as the proposed NLF
4096 design. This is because although successful NLF projects have been developed for small
4097 streams, these do not scale well and can fail when applied to large systems (Frissell and
4098 Nawa 1992).

4099 NMFS believes that regardless of the type of fishway used, successful designs require
4100 matching the hydraulic conditions produced by the design to the physiology, behavior, migration
4101 timing, and life stages of the target species. Additional information on NLFs is available in the
4102 following publications: Newbury and Gaboury (1993), Mooney et al. (2007), Love and Bates
4103 (2009), Barnard et al. (2013), U.S. Bureau of Reclamation (BOR) and USACE (2015), BOR
4104 (2016), Castro and Beavers (2016), and Newbury (2016).

4105 **9.2.1.1 Design slope**

4106 *The design slope is restricted to no more than 4% greater than the average slope of the*
4107 *upstream and downstream reaches. For example, where the average slope of the upstream and*
4108 *downstream reach is 2%, the maximum design slope is 6% (2% + 4% = 6%).*

4109 Based on NMFS' experience, design slopes more than 4% greater than the average
4110 adjacent upstream and downstream reaches may change hydraulic conditions such that fish
4111 passage is blocked or delayed. According to Castro and Beavers (2016), large discontinuities in
4112 slope may prevent the desired passage conditions and structural stability of a NLF from being
4113 maintained throughout the life of the structure.

4114 **9.2.2 Rigid Weirs**

4115 Rigid weirs, which are static, non-deformable structures, can be constructed from
4116 concrete, logs, or sheetpile material (Barnard et al. 2013). Due to corrosion and decomposition,
4117 wood and steel used in rigid weirs can fail over time. Therefore, NMFS suggests using concrete
4118 to construct rigid weirs expected to remain in place over long periods. However, NMFS has
4119 observed that rock elements incorporated into the sills of concrete weirs may come loose,
4120 causing the weirs to not maintain the desired roughness over time.

4121 **9.2.2.1 Footing embedment**

4122 *The base of the weir must be embedded to an elevation no less than 1 foot below the*
4123 *calculated scour elevation or 3 feet below the thalweg, whichever is greater.*

4124 Based on NMFS' experience, scour has frequently compromised weirs where embedment
4125 was insufficient. Weirs designed for larger systems with greater hydraulic energy may require
4126 additional embedment to maintain structural integrity of the design.

4127 **9.2.2.2 Crest shape**

4128 *Weir crests should be sloped across the width of the weir to produce a shallow "V"*
4129 *shaped crest that focuses flow toward the middle of the channel and away from banks. The side*
4130 *slope should be no steeper than 5H:1V.*

4131 The shape of the crest can aggravate upstream backwater effects and downstream scour.
4132 Side slopes exceeding 5H:1V may initiate excessive scour of the bed and banks. In relatively
4133 large channels, side slopes should be less than 5H:1V (Love and Bates 2009).

4134 **9.2.2.3 Concentrating low flows**

4135 *In streams with base flows that routinely are less than 10 to 15 ft³/s, weirs and notches*
4136 *should be included to provide a concentrated, plunging flow of at least 1 ft³/s.*

4137 Low-flow conditions require additional considerations when designing the geometry and
4138 function of a low-flow notch. To ensure adequate water depth at the lowest flows, the notch is
4139 sized and shaped to create a plunging flow regime at 1 ft³/s. For projects where additional flow
4140 concentration is beneficial or required, the entire notch may be designed as a V-notch or the
4141 design could incorporate V-shaped geometry within the notch to create a concentrated, plunging
4142 flow of 1 ft³/s.

4143 **9.2.2.4 Weir spacing**

4144 *Weirs must be spaced a sufficient distance apart to maintain sediment presence along the*
4145 *upstream face of each individual weir. Placement can be informed by the desired hydraulic*
4146 *regimen, and weirs can be placed farther apart to produce step-pool hydraulics or closer*
4147 *together to produce short, streaming chutes. Spacing and associated project roughness must*
4148 *provide adequate resting and holding areas for migrating fish.*

4149 In cases where weirs have been placed too close together, NMFS has observed that
4150 material along the upstream face of the next downstream weir can be scoured away, resulting in
4151 flanking or failure of the weir.

4152 **9.2.2.5 Hyporheic flow**

4153 *When rigid weirs are constructed of sheetpiles, the sheetpiles should be staggered or*
4154 *perforated to a porosity of 30% or greater to maintain hyporheic flow.*

4155 Solid sheetpile embedded to a depth necessary to ensure structural integrity may have the
4156 undesirable effect of cutting off hyporheic water flow, which is a natural stream process. It may
4157 also enable a stream to be dewatered through human actions more completely than could be
4158 achieved with a surface-oriented structure.

4159 **9.2.3 Boulder Weirs**

4160 Boulder weirs are low-elevation structures that span the entire width of a channel. They
4161 are designed to develop an abrupt drop in channel bed and water surface elevation and are used
4162 to stabilize channel grades, improve fish passage, and reduce erosion. Boulder weir designs are
4163 developed based on state and federal fish passage criteria regarding allowable jump height. For
4164 example, in fish-bearing waters in Washington State, vertical drops must not exceed 1 foot
4165 (Washington Administrative Code 220-110-070). Boulder weirs have been used to simulate
4166 natural, step-type drop structures in streams.

4167 **9.2.3.1 Design approach**

4168 *Boulder weirs are most appropriately used in systems with a step-pool morphology where*
4169 *the bed and banks of the stream channel are naturally armored. NMFS-approved boulder weirs*

4170 *are designed using guidance provided in Chapter 7 of BOR (2016). At a minimum, boulder weir*
4171 *designs require two rows of header rock and footer rock. Headers and footers are backfilled*
4172 *with scour-resistant rock along the upstream face of the headers and downstream face of the*
4173 *footers. The boulder weirs should be constructed using material that is well graded and will*
4174 *easily entrain the D84 particle size of the stream channel.*

4175 Traditional boulder weir designs typically consist of two rows of rock: one header row
4176 and one footer row (Rosgen 1996). However, this design is highly prone to failure (Mooney et
4177 al. 2007) and is not recommended for use where sustaining specific streambed or water surface
4178 elevation is critical (Barnard et al. 2013). Drop heights mandated by hydraulic fish passage
4179 criteria more commonly govern this design approach than do natural geomorphic relationships.
4180 Therefore, boulder weirs designed using the traditional method are not recommended by NMFS
4181 for controlling grade and passing fish. Instead, designers must design in accordance with BOR
4182 (2016). The traditional method of designing boulder weirs lacks sufficient consideration of
4183 geomorphic context.

4184 The BOR (2016) boulder weir design approach was developed over the last decade and
4185 was informed through extensive monitoring of hundreds of project sites and hydraulic modeling.
4186 The BOR design approach eliminates many of the shortcomings observed in traditional boulder
4187 weir designs.

4188 **9.2.4 Channel-Spanning Technical Fishways**

4189 Channel-spanning technical fishways are applications of traditional fishway designs
4190 (Chapter 5) through which all streamflow and debris pass. Channel-spanning technical fishway
4191 applications include retrofit designs, which are most commonly found at culverts and
4192 occasionally at bridges. These fishways are subject to additional maintenance challenges not
4193 usually experienced in a traditional fishway application due to sediment load and other debris. In
4194 small streams, traditional fishway designs may be able to operate successfully under an
4195 acceptable range of flows. In larger systems, these designs may operate under too narrow a
4196 range of flows to provide passage during expected passage windows. A technical fishway may
4197 not be the appropriate fish passage approach in situations where large volumes of bed load
4198 material are transported through the project reach because the fishway may fill with sediment.
4199 This increases maintenance requirements and decreases the performance of the fishway for fish
4200 passage.

4201 **9.2.4.1 Fishway type**

4202 The most effective type of channel-spanning technical fishway observed to date by
4203 NMFS has been the pool-and-chute design, or slight variations of this design. Additional
4204 information regarding pool-and-chute fishway design can be found in Chapter 5. Vertical-slot
4205 fishways, Ice Harbor-style fishways, Denils, and ASP designs should not be used for channel-
4206 spanning technical fishways.

4207 **9.2.4.2 Fishway width**

4208 *Minimum fishway width for a channel-spanning technical fishway is the bankfull width of*
4209 *the stream channel. NMFS should be contacted for project-specific recommendations.*

4210 Artificially narrowing or widening the channel at the site of a channel-spanning technical
4211 fishway may cause adverse hydraulic effects.

4212 **9.2.4.3 Project gradient**

4213 *Channel-spanning technical fishways are best suited for sites where project gradients*
4214 *exceed 5%.*

4215 Lower gradients increase the risk of sediment accumulating and impacting fish passage
4216 conditions and are better suited for NLFs or rigid weirs, which do not depend on maintaining
4217 sediment-free pools to successfully pass fish.

4218 **9.2.4.4 Hydraulic criteria**

4219 *All applicable hydraulic criteria for a technical fishway, as described in Chapter 5, must*
4220 *be met. The criteria may need to be modified to reduce the risk of developing a passage barrier*
4221 *over time by designing to lower or higher flows, head drops between weirs, velocities, and EDF*
4222 *thresholds. NMFS should be contacted to identify project-specific requirements for this type of*
4223 *GCF.*

4224 **9.3 Specific Criteria**

4225 Key considerations in the design and implementation of GCFs are provided in
4226 Section 9.3.

4227 **9.3.1 Hydraulic Diversity**

4228 *All GCF projects should be designed to mimic the hydraulic diversity found in natural*
4229 *channels.*

4230 Fish passage at a GCF is partially a function of hydraulic diversity, and GCFs that exhibit
4231 homogenous (or uniform) hydraulics may limit passage compared to more hydraulically diverse
4232 structures. Smaller and weaker fish species may be able to pass in the shallower, lower velocity
4233 water found at the margins of a properly tapered GCF. Figure 9-1 demonstrates how hydraulic
4234 diversity may be effectively incorporated into a GCF design using the following features:

- 4235 · A rigid weir that incorporates large rock and wood to provide hydraulic diversity
- 4236 · Concrete weirs that are spaced close together and function as sediment retaining structures
4237 while providing pool habitat at low flows
- 4238 · Large roughness elements (i.e., large wood and rock elements) to provide the energy
4239 dissipation and velocity reduction necessary for passage at higher flows and retain and sort
4240 sediment in depositional zones throughout the structure



4241
4242 Figure 9-1. Example of hydraulic diversity in a GCF project

4243 **9.3.2 Geomorphic Assessment**

4244 *All project designs must include appropriately scoped geomorphic assessments at the*
4245 *watershed scale, reach scale, and project site. The assessments must consider the geology,*
4246 *hydrology, morphology, sediment transport, vegetation, and potential for channel adjustment.*

4247 Conducting appropriate geomorphic assessments is the most critical aspect of designing
4248 successful GCFs. These assessments are used to determine a suitable GCF approach and the
4249 scale and scope of its implementation. Each assessment must be commensurate with the relative
4250 risk of structural or biological failure of the project. Table 9-1 provides a sampling of
4251 geomorphic information and data collected for these assessments.

4252 Table 9-1. Geomorphic Assessment

Category	Type of Data
Basic Characteristics	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Current and future climate conditions • Land use and development
Hydrology	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ephemeral, intermittent, or perennial hydrology • Stream gage summary • Flood frequency analysis • Historical changes and potential future changes in streamflow

Category	Type of Data
Morphology	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Channel classification • Morphologic dimensions of planform, floodplain, and channel • Long profile • Channel migration zone • Bed and bank adjustment potential • Channel adjustment potential • Presence/absence of armor layers • Erosion/depositional features • Lateral and vertical channel floodplain and channel constraints • Channel evolution phase and trajectory • Dynamic equilibrium • Long profile stability • Historical channel changes/instability • Bank angle, height, layering, material size, sorting, cohesiveness, tension cracks, slumping, bare banks, and root exposure
Sediment Transport	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sediment inputs/origins • Bed material: size, uniformity, packing, and sand fraction • Sediment transport characteristics • Sediment slug material and dimensions • Predicted sediment pulse characteristics
Vegetation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Riparian composition and condition • Wood debris characteristics: maturity, species, collection points, form, and function

4253 Geomorphic assessments must be properly scoped, focusing on the watershed and reach
4254 scales and project site under consideration. For instance, smaller, low-energy streams in
4255 confined and moderately confined channels possessing a highly armored bed and banks may not
4256 benefit from extensive geomorphic assessments. Whereas other projects may require more
4257 extensive assessments—regardless of stream size—because they release stored sediments,
4258 require connecting to floodplains, have incised channels, lack an armored bed and banks, possess
4259 highly migratory or response-driven channels, or are characterized as being unstable.

4260 **9.3.3 Design Flow**

4261 *Hydrologic and hydraulic analyses must be conducted to identify all potential critical*
4262 *flows essential to designing a GCF, maintaining target fish passage conditions, and ensuring the*
4263 *structural stability of a GCF over its intended life span.*

4264 Observations by NMFS of GCF failures indicate the assumption that the 100-year flood
4265 event is a conservative design flow may be false. Unanticipated flow concentration, unstable
4266 flow regimes, hydraulic drops, or hydraulic jumps can result in catastrophic GCF failures.
4267 Therefore, the project should be hydraulically evaluated over the entire expected flow regime,
4268 including the 100-year recurrence interval to identify possible destabilizing forces.

4269

9.3.4 Structural Rock Placement and Spacing

4270 *The location, orientation, and spacing of the largest structural elements in a GCF are*
4271 *critical to the structural stability of the GCF and must be called out in exact detail in*
4272 *engineering and construction documents. Quality control measures must be instituted to ensure*
4273 *the project is constructed to meet specifications. Structural rock is defined as that class of rock*
4274 *with a diameter equal to or greater than 2 feet along its median axis. Where bed and banks are*
4275 *designed to resist scour and hold grade, the spacing of structural class rock should produce a*
4276 *matrix of interlocking stress points between all materials greater than 18 inches in diameter.*

4277 Intentionally placing structural rock, compared to dumping, may significantly improve its
4278 stability to resist hydraulic forces (Jafarnejad et al. 2014; Hiller et al. 2018a). This highlights the
4279 increased stability that GCF designs can achieve if structural rock locations, orientation, and
4280 spacing are calculated, specified, and implemented according to the design, compared to being
4281 randomly dumped or placed. Purposeful placement requires that greater detail and quality
4282 control procedures be identified in project specification documents.

4283 9.3.5 Particle Size Distribution of Engineered Streambed Material

4284 *Particle size distribution of engineered bed and bank material must be well-graded up to*
4285 *the D84 size class, or a size class of about 2 feet in diameter, whichever is smaller.*

4286 NMFS experience has shown that the particle size distribution is a critical component of
4287 GFC stability and porosity. Failure to design a well-graded mix of engineered bed and bank
4288 material may lead an unacceptable degree of structure deformation, which can result in a channel
4289 avulsion or flanking through the scour and displacement of larger structural rock.

4290 Many models and tools exist for appropriately sizing the rock to be used in GCF designs.
4291 However, it is NMFS' experience that in many existing projects the largest rock was
4292 conservatively sized yet significant (adverse) displacement occurred. Smaller material in the bed
4293 and banks mobilize and scour, which results in the displacement of rock thought to be immobile.
4294 This type of failure often occurs due to a lack of material in the 1- to 2-foot range. The lack of
4295 this size class increases the erosion of smaller bed and bank material (12 inches minus material)
4296 out of the GCF.

4297 Suffusion is the movement of smaller, finer particles between larger, coarser particles,
4298 which describes a commonly observed GCF mode of failure. Suffusion occurs when finer
4299 particles erode leaving behind coarser particles that are then susceptible to displacement (Kenney
4300 and Lau 1985). This process is similar to coarsening observed in high-gradient streams after a
4301 debris flow or landslide, as natural sorting processes develop an armored layer.

4302 Suffusion observed in rock-dominated GCFs is largely due to gap grading, where the
4303 smaller gravels and cobbles are highly and mobile. This leads to significant loss of material in
4304 the GCF and facilitates the scour and displacement of the larger structural elements. When an
4305 engineered rock mix used in GCFs is spread over a wide range of particle sizes, it is considered
4306 well-graded. A grading mix containing similar size fractions is termed uniformly graded. In a
4307 stable engineered rock mix, all particles contribute to the structural integrity of the mix. If the

4308 structural mixture is poorly or gap graded, an imbalance is created between the coarser
4309 (structural) and finer (moveable) fractions of grain sizes (Rönnqvist and Viklander 2014).

4310 **9.3.6 Channel Form and Function**

4311 *Designers must provide a detailed description of how the form and function of the GCF*
4312 *will change over time. The description must explain the strategies that will be incorporated into*
4313 *the design and maintenance of the GCF that will mitigate these changes over time, without*
4314 *adversely affecting fish passage or critical stream processes. This explanation will include a*
4315 *discussion of the long-term effects that bed load movement and sediment transport will have on*
4316 *channel stability, porosity, and evolution at the project and reach scales.*

4317 GCFs inevitably adjust over time, regardless of the design approach used. Some GCFs
4318 are designed as threshold channels, where the movement of the boundary material is negligible
4319 during the design flow (NRCS 2007). Even when considerable factors of safety are used,
4320 significant bed and bank adjustment with GCFs occurs after construction. NMFS recommends
4321 using design methods that increase the number of components within the design to enhance
4322 channel stability and form, rather than relying solely on conservative rock sizing to increase
4323 channel stability.

4324 GCF designs may incorporate engineered rock ramps to simulate riffle-pool complexes,
4325 chutes to simulate step-pool features, and rock bands to simulate cascade-pool morphologies. In
4326 nature, these structures develop through fluvial processes and persist over time through structural
4327 redundancy. For example, redundancy occurs because there are readily available sediment
4328 inputs that re-supply the channel with the volume and distribution of rock necessary to maintain
4329 channel form and function. Also, redundancy in nature occurs because the number of structural
4330 rocks within any given reach—which provides stability of riffles, cascades, and drops—is often
4331 much greater than is typically exhibited in engineered designs. These redundancies allow natural
4332 channels to move large, structural-sized material without severely degrading grade control in the
4333 reach. GCF designs must incorporate these same redundancies to the extent possible using
4334 engineering methods.

4335 In larger streams, rock bands, weirs, bed armoring, bank armoring, and similar GCF
4336 components should be expected to fail at some point; thus, the design should include redundancy
4337 in the form of additional material or structure composition. Additional material can be placed in
4338 the bed and banks to be “self-launching” when scour or flanking occurs at critical, or expected,
4339 locations within the design. This material must be sized to provide both added stability at the
4340 desired location and inputs of critical rock sizes that benefit downstream sections of the design.

4341 **9.3.7 Design Must Specify the Selected Roughness**

4342 *Designers must provide NMFS with detailed specifications showing how passage*
4343 *roughness will be physically represented in the design. Passage roughness consists of individual*
4344 *elements (such as rock or wood elements) that project into the water column a minimum of*
4345 *0.75 times the bankfull depth at the bankfull discharge. These elements provide the energy*
4346 *dissipation and velocity reduction necessary for fish to pass when the gradient is high. A total of*
4347 *40% of the project surface area should be occupied by passage roughness. Of this 40%, a*

4348 *minimum 15% of the project surface area should be occupied by material extending 1.75 times*
4349 *the bankfull depth into the water column at the bankfull discharge.*

4350 NMFS experience indicates fish passage conditions in high-gradient channels are largely
4351 provided through energy dissipation and velocity reduction created by its boundary layer. For
4352 fish passage designs, channel roughness at the boundary layer is best described as relative
4353 roughness. Relative roughness of a particular particle size (e.g., D50, D84, D90) is calculated as
4354 the size of the particle relative to a particular stream depth. For fish passage, particles exhibiting
4355 a high relative roughness provide the necessary energy dissipation and velocity reduction for
4356 passage.

4357 Channels with low relative roughness (uniform size material), are characterized as
4358 hydraulically smooth. Hydraulically smooth channels at high gradients provide little to no
4359 resting or holding areas for fish. These channel types commonly fail to meet velocity criteria for
4360 effective fish passage. It is critical to provide roughness elements that extend significantly into
4361 the water column to reduce velocity and to provide resting and holding areas for fish. This
4362 criterion was developed based on the relationship between natural D84 and D90 class material
4363 and bankfull depth for streams in Washington State with slopes greater than 2% (Barnard 2013).

4364 **9.3.8 Velocity**

4365 *Maximum average velocity for NLF, rigid weir, and boulder weir GCF designs are as*
4366 *follows:*

- 4367 · *4 ft/s at the 10% exceedance flow*
- 4368 · *5 ft/s at the 5% exceedance flow*
- 4369 · *6 ft/s at the 1% exceedance flow*

4370 These criteria are based on observations in high-gradient streams, where average velocity
4371 was a nearly constant 4 ft/s at the 10% exceedance flow (Barnard 2013); this relationship was
4372 independent of channel slope. Also, a sample of streams from Washington, Idaho, and Oregon
4373 contained in Castro and Jackson (2001) indicated that average velocity was nearly 6 ft/s under
4374 bankfull conditions.

4375 **9.3.9 Demonstrated Design Roughness**

4376 *Designers must provide NMFS with a detailed plan that specifies how modeled roughness*
4377 *will be physically represented in the design to maintain velocity criteria. Project design and its*
4378 *implementation are expected to make the best possible effort to attain appropriate roughness.*

4379 Design slope and cross-sectional geometry of GCFs during construction can be
4380 controlled. Periodic surveys during construction will confirm whether the constructed channel is
4381 in compliance with the design and will identify any adjustments needed to meet design
4382 specifications.

4383 In addition to channel slope and cross-sectional geometry, channel roughness also affects
4384 velocity. Physically representing channel roughness in the design requires the ability to quantify

4385 the roughness value used in modeling and accurately translate and apply those same roughness
4386 characteristics into the design. This step is critical to providing successful passage.

4387 **9.3.10 Bed Thickness**

4388 *The thickness of the GCF bed must be a minimum of 1.5 times the anticipated scour*
4389 *depth.*

4390 Due to limitations inherent in scour calculations and the likelihood of project failure in
4391 the event of complete bed scour, as a measure of engineering conservatism, bed thickness will be
4392 designed to a depth of 1.5 times the anticipated scour depth.

4393 **9.3.11 Energy Dissipation Pools**

4394 *At a minimum, an energy dissipation pool must be incorporated into the design for every*
4395 *5 feet of vertical channel displacement. The minimum length of energy dissipation pools is twice*
4396 *the length of the design pool lengths, or two bankfull widths, whichever is greater.*

4397 Energy dissipation pools provide enhanced passage conditions and improve structure
4398 longevity. They enhance fish passage by continuing to provide holding and resting areas for fish
4399 at flows higher than the fish passage design flow. Energy dissipation pools also reduce the
4400 average hydraulic forces acting on the structure as a whole by lowering the velocity and
4401 momentum of flow through the structure.

4402 **9.3.12 Slope Transitions**

4403 *The natural channel and the design must exhibit gradual hydraulic transition of flow*
4404 *characteristics moving into (fish exit) and out of (fish entrance) the GCF project reach. Designs*
4405 *must taper the upstream banks so there is a gradual hydraulic transition into the GCF project*
4406 *reach from the channel upstream, and shape or armor the transition so that the upstream*
4407 *channel does not outflank the project. The geomorphic assessment is critical to developing the*
4408 *scope and scale of flanking countermeasures.*

4409 *In situations where a channel-spanning technical fishway and rigid weirs are used as the*
4410 *GCF, the three most upstream weirs must be set to gradually transition the slope of the water*
4411 *surface between the upstream channel and the project. This will typically require having from 3*
4412 *to 4 inches of vertical displacement, or drop, between each of the three uppermost weir crests.*

4413 *Where discrete hydraulic drops are absent (i.e., riffles, cascades, or chutes) in the GCF,*
4414 *the upstream transition section is located at the uppermost end (exit) of the GCF. The length of*
4415 *the transition section begins at the GCF exit and is equal to 1.5 times the bankfull width. The*
4416 *average slope of this section is half the design slope. For example, where the design slope is*
4417 *4%, the average slope of the upstream transition section is 2%.*

4418 Abrupt transitions in channel confinement, skew, and slope have been observed to be
4419 associated with hydraulic conditions promoting unintended and unmitigated scour, which has led
4420 to structural failure and passage barriers. Abrupt changes in channel orientation (skew) and
4421 slope should be avoided as much as possible. The presence of abutments, aprons, weirs, and

4422 other in-stream or adjacent structures that may affect near-field hydraulic drops and jumps
4423 should be modeled to determine an appropriate design approach for promoting smooth hydraulic
4424 transitions at the exit and entrance of the GCF. Even moderate channel constriction should be
4425 avoided.

4426 *The sill elevation of the most downstream control weir of the project must be embedded*
4427 *1.5 times the calculated scour depth, or 3 feet below the thalweg, whichever is greater. A rock-*
4428 *or wood-based GCF may be required to attenuate or mitigate any active incision, erosion, or*
4429 *local annual changes to the bed elevation downstream of the GCF entrance.*

4430 The criteria for embedding the most downstream control weir provides a factor of safety
4431 for mitigating future vertical adjustment, erosion, or active incision of the downstream channel.
4432 Toe protection at the downstream end of the structure is critical to ensuring a jump barrier is not
4433 caused due to excessive or unanticipated scour.

4434 **9.3.13 Quality Control**

4435 *Quality control methods for ensuring correct material, volume, condition, size, location,*
4436 *and distribution of rock and wood material used in GCF designs must be submitted with all GCF*
4437 *designs to NMFS for review and comment.*

4438 NMFS has observed that the size, quantity, and quality of rock and wood material
4439 incorporated into GCF structures significantly affects the ability of the project to meet fish
4440 passage standards and incorporate critical stream processes. A common observation when
4441 projects fail to meet fish passage standards or provide critical stream processes post-construction
4442 is that quality control during construction was not implemented, or the methods were poorly
4443 executed with respect to the rock and wood material called for in the design. Specification
4444 details related to engineering requirements, construction methods and processes, and quality
4445 control over these factors are directly linked to a project's success.

4446 **9.3.14 Washing and Sealing Bed and Banks**

4447 *Engineered bed and bank material must be periodically sealed during construction by*
4448 *jetting or washing finer sand and gravel material to prevent loss of surface flow passing over*
4449 *completed projects.*

4450 A sufficient flow of water through the GCF must be provided to accumulate and compact
4451 fine sediments into any voids (i.e., washing). Washing and sealing bed and bank material is
4452 critical for maintaining low-flow fish passage conditions; it should be conducted simultaneously
4453 with the bed and bank installation. Washing should be frequent, preferably continuous,
4454 throughout construction of the bed and banks. Water velocity is not as important as volume for
4455 properly sealing beds and banks. Turbid runoff must be treated to meet regional water quality
4456 standards before re-entering the channel downstream.

4457 Periodic observations must be made to determine if bed and bank material is sealing
4458 properly during placement. These observations must include determining the magnitude of
4459 sealing (or lack of noticeable infiltration of pooled water) for a minimum of 5 minutes for every
4460 45 feet of bed and bank installed. After all bed and bank material has been installed and washed,

4461 the design must pool water without any noticeable infiltration for 30 minutes. Sections of
4462 channel that do not meet this specification must be brought into compliance through one or more
4463 of the following methods:

- 4464 · Application of additional selected streambed gravel and washing
- 4465 · Mechanical agitation using approved methods
- 4466 · Removal and replacement of engineered bed and bank material

4467 **9.3.15 Maintenance and Monitoring**

4468 *A NMFS-approved maintenance and monitoring plan is required. It must contain*
4469 *adaptive management triggers and measures that address how morphology and passage*
4470 *hydraulics will be monitored and modified if necessary. Monitoring is conducted the first*
4471 *3 years post-construction and following the 10-year, 25-year, and 50-year flood return intervals.*

4472 The following components should be included in the maintenance and monitoring plan:

- 4473 · Fish Passage Assessment – Depending on project-specific considerations, monitoring may
4474 include an assessment of passage efficiency via NMFS-approved means of biological
4475 evaluation. This monitoring requirement is specific to each project and will be identified by
4476 NMFS on a project-specific basis.
- 4477 · Channel Stability – The loss or displacement of bed and bank material after a high-flow
4478 event does not necessarily equate to a failure to maintain passage conditions. Any resulting
4479 loss or displacement of bed and bank material will be evaluated by NMFS as part of the
4480 monitoring and maintenance plan. Repairs, if warranted, will be identified by NMFS and
4481 designed and carried out by the maintaining entity.
- 4482 · Channel Velocity – Channel velocity will be verified through monitoring. When average
4483 channel velocity exceeds velocity criteria, NMFS will evaluate the passage conditions of the
4484 fishway. Repairs or adaptive management actions, if warranted, will be identified by NMFS
4485 and carried out by the maintaining entity.
- 4486 · Channel Roughness – This design element is verified through post-construction monitoring.

4487 Due to the diversity of GCF designs and the variable nature of channel roughness,
4488 monitoring requirements are specific to each project and will be identified by NMFS on a
4489 project-specific basis. Repairs, if warranted, will be identified by NMFS and designed and
4490 carried out by the maintaining entity.

4491

10 Fish Screen and Bypass Facilities

4492

10.1 Introduction

4493 Chapter 10 provides criteria for designing fish screen facilities for hydroelectric,
4494 municipal, irrigation, and other water-withdrawal projects that prevent fish (primarily young fish,
4495 fish with poor swimming capabilities, and larvae) from being entrained into water diversions.
4496 The objectives of these criteria are to develop fish screen facility designs that prevent fish
4497 impingement on the outward face of all fish screen material, do not increase predation above
4498 background levels, and ensure the structural integrity and longevity of all facility components is
4499 maintained. This allows the facility to be operated within its design criteria and protects fisheries
4500 resources over the design life of the project.

4501 The criteria are to be used when designing new facilities or performing major retrofits to
4502 existing facilities. In addition, information presented in Chapter 1, Introduction; Chapter 3,
4503 Design Development; and Chapter 4, Design Flow Range, of this document apply to the design
4504 of fish screen and bypass facilities.

4505

10.1.1 100% Flow Screening

4506 *All facilities that divert or use water from a body of water must convey 100% of the*
4507 *diverted flow through a fish screen or bypass that is designed, constructed, tested, and operated*
4508 *using the criteria contained herein.*

4509 The application of these criteria to existing fish screen facilities is addressed in
4510 Section 10.2.

4511

10.1.2 Deviation from These Criteria

4512 *The criteria can be adjusted by NMFS as needed to meet the specific requirements of a*
4513 *project. It is the responsibility of the applicant to provide compelling evidence in support of any*
4514 *proposed waiver (Section 1.6) or modification of a criterion to NMFS early in the design process*
4515 *and well in advance of a proposed federal action. Appendix C (Experimental Technologies)*
4516 *provides additional information on the NMFS approval process for unproven fish passage*
4517 *technologies.*

4518 The swimming ability of target fish species and their life stages are primary
4519 considerations in designing effective fish screen facilities. The swimming abilities of fish vary
4520 with species, age-class, size, and duration (i.e., endurance) and type of swimming activity
4521 required (e.g., sustained versus burst swim speed). Bell (1991) provides information on
4522 swimming speeds for multiple fish species and age-classes and for different functional speeds
4523 (cruising, sustained, and darting). Swimming ability also depends upon a number of biological

4524 and physical factors, including the physical condition of individual fish; water quality
4525 parameters, such as dissolved oxygen concentration and water temperature; and ambient lighting
4526 conditions. For example, swimming effort may be reduced by 60% at oxygen levels that are
4527 one-third of saturation, and temperatures above and below the optimum range for any species
4528 affect swimming effort (Bell 1991). Adverse temperatures may reduce swimming effort by 50%
4529 (Brett et al. 1958).

4530 **10.1.3 Experimental Technology**

4531 *The process to evaluate experimental screening technology, described in Appendix C,*
4532 *must be followed. Proponents of new, unproven fish passage designs (i.e., designs not meeting*
4533 *the criteria and guidelines contained in this document) must provide NMFS with the types of*
4534 *information identified in Section 1.5.*

4535 NMFS considers several categories of screen designs that are currently in use to be
4536 experimental technologies. These include Eicher screens, modular inclined screens, and Coanda
4537 intake screens. Infiltration galleries may be considered an acceptable alternative for excluding
4538 fish at water diversions, but these are not considered positive exclusion barriers. Therefore, they
4539 are not addressed in this chapter. Information on the design and use of infiltration galleries is
4540 presented in Appendix B. The design and use of experimental technologies may be considered
4541 on a case-by-case basis through discussions with NMFS and in accordance with the procedures
4542 outlined in Appendix C.

4543 **10.2 Existing Fish Screens**

4544 **10.2.1 General**

4545 *If a fish screen was constructed prior to the date of this document, but in accordance with*
4546 *the NMFS criteria that were established on August 21, 1989, or later, NMFS considers these*
4547 *screens to be compliant provided that all of the following conditions have been met:*

- 4548 • *The entire screen facility functions as designed.*
- 4549 • *The entire screen facility has been maintained and is in good working condition.*
- 4550 • *When screen material wears out, it is replaced with screen material meeting the current*
4551 *criteria stated in this document (Section 10.5.8). To comply with this condition, structural*
4552 *modifications may be required to retrofit an existing facility with new screen material.*
- 4553 • *Mortality, injury, entrainment, impingement, migration delay, or other harm to anadromous*
4554 *fish caused by the facility has not been observed.*
- 4555 • *Emergent fry are unlikely to be located in the vicinity of the screen, as agreed to by NMFS*
4556 *biologists familiar with the site.*
- 4557 • *When biological uncertainty exists, access to the diversion site by NMFS is permitted by the*
4558 *owner or operator of the facility for verification that the criteria in this chapter are being*
4559 *met.*

4560

10.3 Project Design Review

4561 *The most effective approach to designing fish screening and bypass projects is to have*
4562 *NMFS included in all phases of the design. This can occur by having NMFS participate in a*
4563 *technical advisory team convened for the project or having NMFS review and comment on*
4564 *project designs, or both. While both the preliminary and final designs must be developed in*
4565 *cooperation and interaction with engineering staff from NMFS WCR Environmental Services*
4566 *Division (Section 3.2), it is especially important that NMFS be involved in the preliminary design*
4567 *phase of a project. This is to ensure that the design parameters needed to produce a functional*
4568 *fish passage project are established early in the design process.*

4569 The project design process is most efficient when design criteria are identified and
4570 accepted by NMFS while a project is in its infancy. The entire project design development
4571 process and information typically required for a preliminary design are discussed in Chapter 3.

4572

10.4 Structure Placement

4573 *All screen facilities must be designed to function properly and protect fish from being*
4574 *entrained into the water diversion throughout the full range of hydrologic conditions expected to*
4575 *occur at the location.*

4576 For in-stream facilities, the full range of conditions is normally from low-flow conditions
4577 up to a 100-year flood event. In situations where streambanks will overtop allowing flow into
4578 the canal outside of the screen area at flows lower than the 100-year flood event, the screen may
4579 be designed to resist overtopping up to the lower flows. NMFS may require that fish be rescued
4580 from canals that have been inundated with unscreened flood flows.

4581

10.4.1 In-Stream Installations

4582 *Where it is physically practical and biologically desirable to do so, the fish screen should*
4583 *be constructed at the point of water diversion, and the screen face should be oriented parallel to*
4584 *the streamflow.*

4585 Several physical factors may preclude a fish screen from being located and constructed at
4586 the water diversion. These include excess channel gradient; the potential for large debris to
4587 damage the screen facility; access for personnel and equipment to conduct facility maintenance,
4588 operations, and repair; unsuitable soils for constructing a fish screen facility at the point of
4589 diversion; and the potential for heavy sediment accumulations.

4590 Depending on site-specific conditions, in-stream screens may be subject to increased
4591 damage by debris. However, they typically offer the following advantages:

- 4592 · They do not require a formal bypass system.
- 4593 · They keep migrating fish in the streamflow.
- 4594 · They may reduce fish proximity to the screen face.

4595 **10.4.1.1 Bankline screens**

4596 *For screens constructed at the edge of a stream (Figures 10-1 through 10-3), the screen*
4597 *face must be aligned with the adjacent bankline, and the transition between the native*
4598 *streambank and the fish screen face must be shaped to minimize turbulence and eddying in front,*
4599 *upstream, and downstream of the screen. For inclined, flat plate screen designs, the screen*
4600 *angle must not be greater than 45 degrees from vertical, and the top of the screen must be*
4601 *submerged a minimum of 1 foot at low stream design flow. The design must also minimize any*
4602 *adverse alteration of riverine and riparian habitat.*

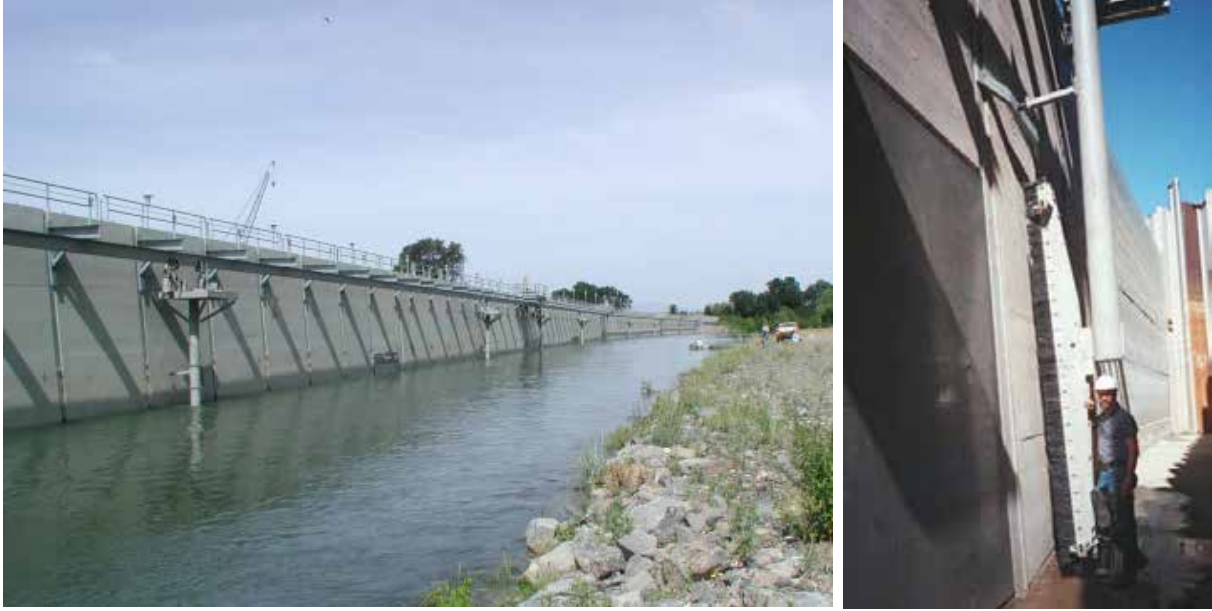


4603
4604 Figure 10-1. Aerial view of the Garden City-Lowden 2 water diversion on Walla Walla River
4605 near Touchet, Washington

4606 (Notes: River flow is from left to right. The bankline screen is located at the head end of the canal, just upstream of
4607 the spillway and adult ladder exit.)



4608
4609 Figure 10-2. Bankline screens at the Garden City-Lowden 2 diversion on the Walla Walla River
4610 near Touchet, Washington, under construction

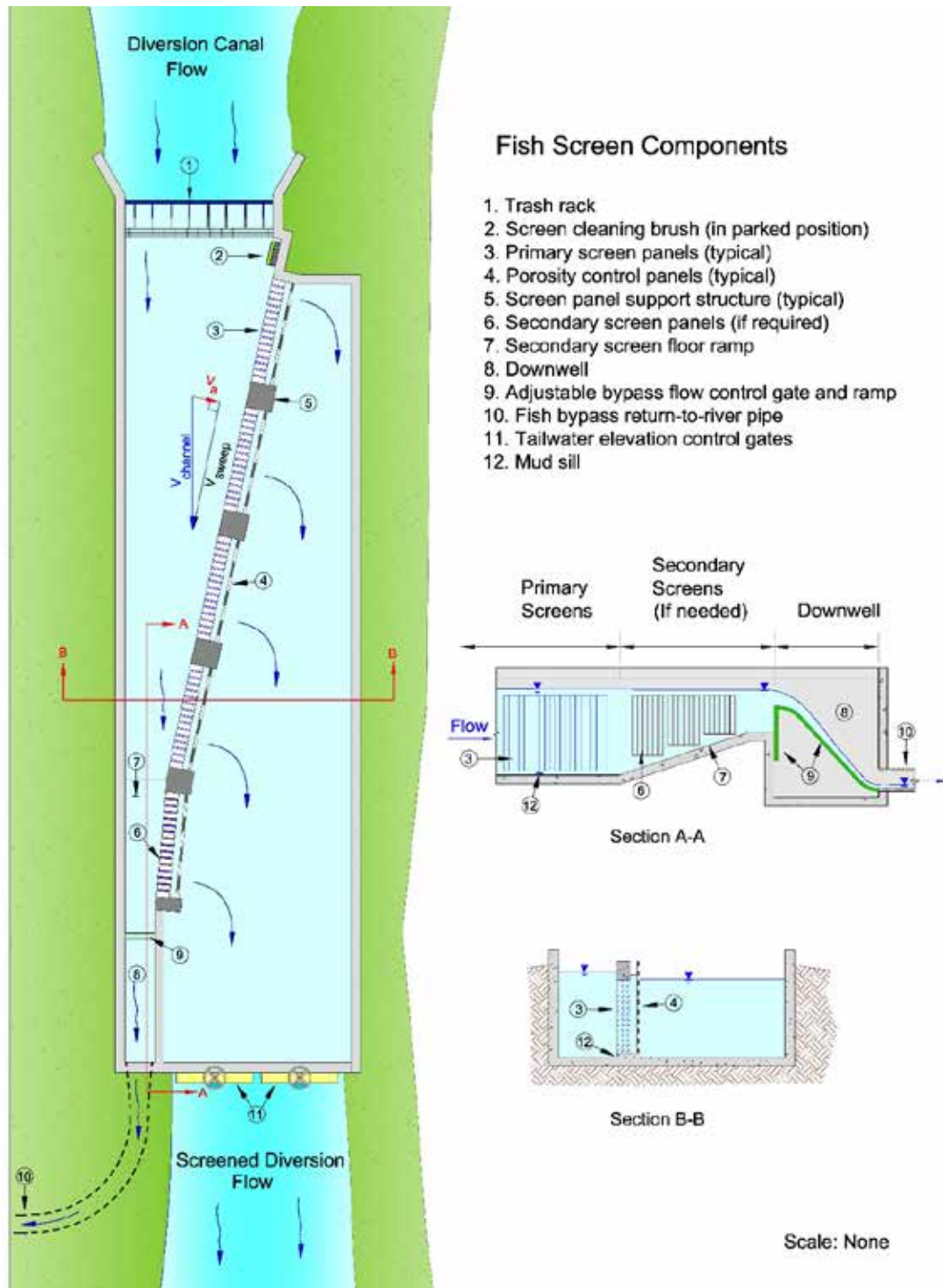


4611
4612 Figure 10-3. Bankline vertical flat plate fish screen sized for 3,000 ft³/s (Glenn-Colusa Irrigation
4613 District) along the Sacramento River in California
4614 (Note: the screen is shown in operation (left) and during construction (right).)

4615 **10.4.2 In-Canal Installations**

4616 *All screen facilities installed within canals must include an effective fish bypass system*
4617 *(Section 10.6) to collect and transport screened fish safely back to the river with minimum delay*
4618 *(Figures 10-4 and 10-5). In instances where the returned bypass flow represents a substantial*
4619 *proportion of the remaining instream flow downstream from the water diversion, the bypass*
4620 *outfall must be placed as close to the point of diversion as practicable to minimize the length of*
4621 *the dewatered stream channel.*

4622 Where installation of fish screens at a diversion entrance is not desirable or is deemed
4623 impractical, the screens may be installed at a suitable location in the canal downstream of the
4624 water diversion. Locating the bypass outfall as close to the point of diversion as possible reduces
4625 the length of dewatered stream channel.



4626

4627 Figure 10-4. Schematic of a typical fish screen system layout and components at water
4628 diversions



4629
4630 Figure 10-5. Vertical plate screen facility under construction in a diversion canal located on the
4631 Santiam River near Stayton, Oregon

4632 **10.4.2.1 Headworks trash rack**

4633 *All in-canal screens must have a trash rack at the canal headworks to minimize the*
4634 *amount of debris that will reach the fish screen structure (Bell 1991). Trash racks must have*
4635 *openings that are at least 10 inches wide for Chinook salmon passage and 8 inches wide for all*
4636 *other salmonid species.*

4637 Additional trash rack design criteria are provided in Section 5.8 of this document. Bell
4638 (1991) recommends that openings be 12 inches wide for large salmon.

4639 **10.4.3 Lakes, Reservoirs, and Tidal Areas**

4640 *Intakes in lakes, reservoirs, and tidal areas must be located offshore where feasible to*
4641 *minimize shoreline-oriented fish from coming into contact with the facility. When possible,*
4642 *intakes must be located in areas with sufficient ambient velocity to minimize sediment*
4643 *accumulation in or around the screen. Intakes in reservoirs should be at an appropriate depth to*
4644 *reduce the number of juvenile salmonids that encounter the intake.*

4645 The appropriate depth for intakes in lakes, reservoirs, and tidal areas will be determined
4646 on a case-by-case basis. One factor that will be considered when locating these intakes is that
4647 although juvenile salmonids are surface oriented, they may congregate in colder water located at
4648 depth if surface waters are too warm.

4649 **10.4.3.1 Required submergence**

4650 *For facilities in lakes, reservoirs, and tidal areas, the facility must be placed such that the*
4651 *screen area is adequately submerged to meet the design approach velocity criterion at the*
4652 *historic low water conditions (Section 10.5.7).*

4653 **10.5 Screen Design Specifications**

4654 **10.5.1 Approach Velocity**

4655 *The design approach velocity for active screens must not exceed 0.4 ft/s for fish screens*
4656 *where exposure time is limited to less than 60 seconds, or 0.33 ft/s where exposure time is*
4657 *greater than 60 seconds (Smith and Carpenter 1987; Clay 1995). The design approach velocity*
4658 *for passive screens, as described in Section 10.5.6, must not exceed 0.2 ft/s (Cech et al. 2001).*

4659 For the purposes of this document, approach velocity, “ V_a ” in Figure 10-4, is defined as
4660 the water velocity component normal (perpendicular) to the screen surface. The minimum
4661 amount of screen area required is calculated by dividing the maximum diversion rate (in ft^3/s) by
4662 the design approach velocity (in ft/s). The porosity of the screen is not considered in the
4663 calculation of approach velocity. The operating approach velocity for any fish screen at any
4664 diversion rate may be calculated by dividing the current diversion flow rate by the effective
4665 screen area (Section 10.5.2).

4666 Exposure time is defined as the time it takes a particle to traverse the length of the fish
4667 screen when moving at the speed of the sweeping velocity (Section 10.5.3). The design
4668 approach velocity criteria have been shown to minimize juvenile fish contact with, and
4669 impingement on, screen materials. This includes the impingement of emergent fry under
4670 coldwater temperature conditions. (Appendix E provides a discussion of how to measure
4671 approach velocity.)

4672 Note that these criteria apply to salmonids and other species may require different
4673 approach velocity standards. For example, in California, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
4674 requires that a design approach velocity of 0.2 ft/s be used at locations where Delta smelt
4675 (*Hypomesus transpacificus*) are present.

4676 **10.5.2 Effective Screen Area**

4677 *The effective screen area is defined as the total wetted screen area minus the area*
4678 *occluded by major structural elements. The minimum effective screen area required is the*
4679 *maximum screen flow divided by the allowable approach velocity. For rotary drum screens, the*
4680 *effective screen area is defined as the vertical projection of the wetted screen area minus the*
4681 *vertical projections of the area occluded by major structural elements.*

4682 **10.5.3 Sweeping Velocity**

4683 *Sweeping velocity is defined as the water velocity component parallel to the face of a fish*
4684 *screen (Figure 10-4). The design sweeping velocities must never be less than the design*

4685 *approach velocity and must not decrease along the length of the screen. Sweeping velocities*
4686 *between 0.8 and 3 ft/s are optimal.*

4687 A swift sweeping velocity may help move fish and debris past the fish screen and reduce
4688 the chance of impingement of juvenile salmonids on the screen material (Cech et al. 2001).
4689 Based on laboratory studies, Cech et al. (2001) reported that high sweeping velocity (2 ft/s)
4690 minimized juvenile Chinook salmon contacts with screens during daylight conditions and
4691 maximized downstream passage during day and night conditions.

4692 **10.5.3.1 In-canal screens**

4693 *In-canal screens should be angled across the canal to provide a sweeping velocity within*
4694 *the optimal range for the entire range of design conditions (Clay 1995). For screens shorter*
4695 *than 6 feet in length, the screen may be arranged perpendicular to canal flow. The sweeping*
4696 *velocity must not accelerate faster than 0.2 feet per second per foot (ft/s/ft) toward the bypass*
4697 *entrance.*

4698 Studies show juvenile salmonids may resist entering a bypass system when encountering
4699 a sudden acceleration in water velocity (Haro et al. 1998). The acceleration criterion is designed
4700 to gradually guide fish toward and into the bypass entrance.

4701 Brett and Alderdice (1953), as referenced in Clay (1995), recommend a uniform
4702 acceleration rate of no more than 0.1 ft/s/ft of length.

4703 **10.5.3.2 On-river screens**

4704 *Designers have less control over sweeping flow for screens built in a river or on the bank*
4705 *of a river; however, designers should make every attempt to ensure that sweeping velocity does*
4706 *not decrease along the length of the screen. This is to encourage fish to move past the facility*
4707 *and reduce the chance that sediment will deposit along the length of the screen.*

4708 **10.5.3.3 Quiescent and tidal areas**

4709 *To mitigate for a lack of sweeping velocity in quiescent and tidal areas, designers should*
4710 *use a design approach velocity not greater than 0.33 ft/s when calculating the effective screen*
4711 *area.*

4712 Fish screens in lakes and tidal areas usually cannot meet the sweeping velocity criteria for
4713 in-canal or on-river screens. A lower approach velocity is required for these types of screens to
4714 allow fish to volitionally swim away from the screen face.

4715 **10.5.4 Flow Distribution**

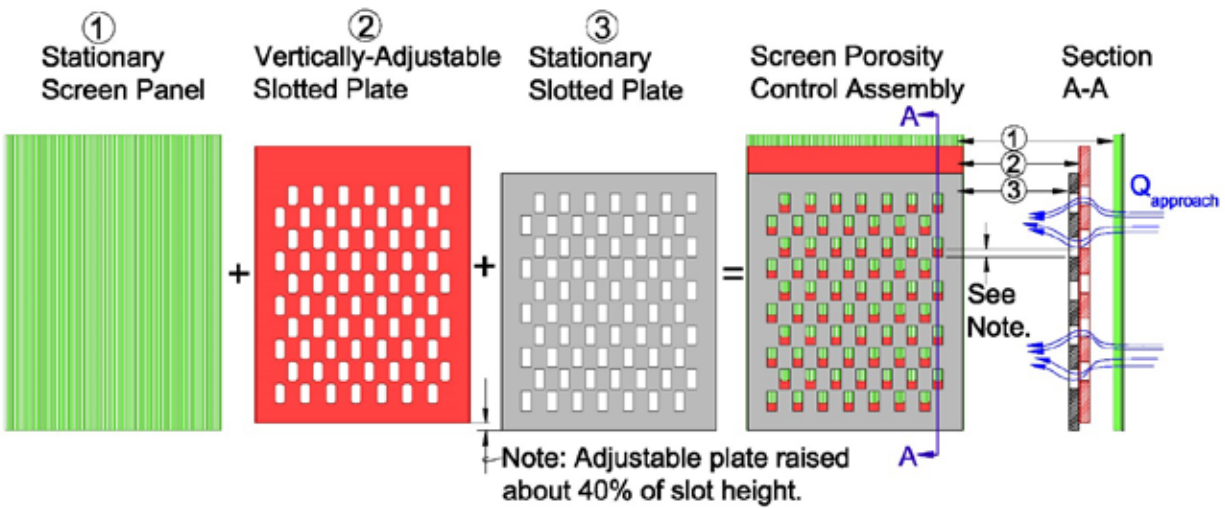
4716 *The screen design must provide for nearly uniform flow distribution over the screen*
4717 *surface, thereby minimizing approach velocity over the entire screen face. The designer must*
4718 *demonstrate how a uniform flow distribution will be achieved. The maximum deviation from the*
4719 *target design approach velocity is 10%.*

4720 Achieving a uniform flow distribution eliminates localized areas of high velocity that
4721 have the potential to impinge fish and debris. Methods that could be used to achieve uniform
4722 flow distribution include incorporating porosity control features on the downstream side of
4723 screens that can be adjusted and training walls to direct flow into the design. Large facilities
4724 may require hydraulic modeling to identify and areas of flow distribution that are of concern to
4725 NMFS.

4726 **10.5.4.1 Porosity controls**

4727 *To ensure uniform flow distribution, most screens should be equipped with some form of*
4728 *tunable porosity controls placed immediately behind the screen. For tall screens, NMFS may*
4729 *require that the screen height be divided into multiple, independent tuning modules to ensure*
4730 *approach velocity uniformity. Screen porosity controls must be tuned to achieve approach*
4731 *velocity criteria prior to a screen being placed into service. The use of louver-style porosity*
4732 *control baffles is limited to flat plate screens 6 feet in height or shorter.*

4733 The most common porosity control devices used to date have been louvers, where the
4734 angle of the louver can be varied to control the quantity of water flowing through the screen in
4735 front of the louver. However, it has been shown that it can be difficult to achieve uniform flow
4736 when using louver baffles (e.g., AECOM 2009). A newer method provides a more effective
4737 means of tuning screen velocity and flow distribution. It consists of sliding, overlapping porosity
4738 plates that are in contact with each other (Figure 10-6). As the moveable plate (vertically
4739 adjustable slotted plate; Figure 10-6) is adjusted, it obscures a progressively larger percentage of
4740 the perforations of the fixed plate (the stationary slotted plate; Figure 10-6). These panels
4741 (baffles) are typically installed in sections no greater than 2 feet wide, which provides fine-scale
4742 porosity adjustments for the screen as a whole. Porosity plates with square or slotted openings
4743 provide linear adjustability unlike porosity plates with circular openings (i.e., the change in
4744 porosity is linearly proportional to the distance the adjustable plate is moved). The adjustable
4745 and stationary slotted plates (parts 2 and 3, respectively, in Figure 10-6) should be of the same
4746 material or of different materials with similar coefficients of thermal expansion to maintain
4747 relative positioning over a range of temperatures. Ultra-high-molecular-weight polyethylene has
4748 a high coefficient of thermal expansion and should not be paired with aluminum or steel for this
4749 purpose.



4750

4751 Figure 10-6. Schematic diagram of sliding, overlapping porosity plates used to control porosity
 4752 and achieve uniform flow conditions through fish screens

4753 **10.5.5 Active Screen Cleaning Systems (Active Screens)**

4754 *All new fish screens must incorporate an automated cleaning system unless the project*
 4755 *meets the requirements for passive screens listed in Section 10.5.6.*

4756 **10.5.5.1 Screen cleaning systems (in-canal or on-river screens)**

4757 *Screen cleaners must be capable of removing debris from the entire screen surface at*
 4758 *least once every 5 minutes and should be operated as required to prevent debris accumulation.*
 4759 *Cleaning systems should be designed to operate continuously or on an adjustable timer. On*
 4760 *larger screens, the cleaning system must also be triggered whenever the head differential across*
 4761 *the screen exceeds 0.3 foot over the clean screen condition. The cleaning system and operations*
 4762 *protocol must be effective, reliable, and satisfactory to NMFS. Physical cleaning systems that*
 4763 *use a travelling brush or wiper should provide a means for the brush to move away from the*
 4764 *screen face at the downstream end of brush travel to allow for the release of accumulated debris.*

4765 Fish screens operate most efficiently when they are clean and free of impinged material
 4766 and attached growth such as algae or sponges (Bell 1991). Fish screen material with a porosity
 4767 of about 50% will result in negligible head loss at the design approach velocity values identified
 4768 in Section 10.5.1. Head loss across a screen due to impinged debris increases with the loss of
 4769 screen open area at a geometric rate (BOR 2006). With increasing head loss, the force impinging
 4770 debris (or fish) on the screen material also increases, making cleaning the screen more difficult.
 4771 A screen experiencing 0.3 foot of head loss under an operating approach velocity of 0.4 ft/s may
 4772 have less than 10% open area due to debris impingement. Under this condition, any weak-
 4773 swimming fish coming in contact with the screen would experience injury or death due to the
 4774 excessive forces acting on its body. Additionally, the water diversion would begin to experience
 4775 significant reduction in diversion rate, and the facility could experience structural damage.
 4776 Systems to monitor head differential across a screen should be designed to distinguish head loss
 4777 due to debris impingement from loss caused by wave action or other transient disturbances.

4778 Automated screen cleaning systems are generally categorized as physical, hydraulic, or
4779 pneumatic. Physical cleaning systems use a brush or other wiper device to physically remove
4780 impinged debris and attached growth and have a long history of successful deployments. NMFS
4781 recommends the use of a physical cleaning system for most screen applications; however, there
4782 are instances when a hydraulic or pneumatic cleaning system may be more practical.

4783 Hydraulic cleaning systems use high-pressure water jets to remove debris from the screen
4784 face and rely on a current (or trash removal systems in the case of traveling belt screens) to
4785 remove debris from the vicinity of the screen facility. However, hydraulic cleaning systems do
4786 not remove attached growth as effectively as physical cleaning systems and may stimulate the
4787 growth of some types of algae.

4788 Pneumatic cleaning systems use compressed air to lift debris from the screen face and
4789 rely on a current to remove debris from the vicinity of the screen facility. Pneumatic cleaning
4790 systems provide a cleaning force by displacing water primarily in the upwards direction;
4791 therefore, air burst cleaning systems in horizontal cylindrical screens may not remove debris
4792 impinged on the bottom of those screens. Pneumatic cleaning systems cannot completely
4793 remove attached growth and may stimulate the growth of some types of algae. If a screen
4794 material were to become occluded with attached growth, the compressed air can impart
4795 tremendous buoyant forces on the screen material and the facility overall. Screens employing a
4796 pneumatic cleaning system must consider the buoyancy force of trapped air when designing
4797 facility foundation and structural components. An additional problem faced by pneumatic
4798 cleaning systems is that they are frequently undersized and cannot provide the required volume
4799 of air to clean the entire screen face. This is exacerbated by the tendency for the air bubbles to
4800 take the path of least resistance, which can often be the clean portions of the screen.

4801 **10.5.5.2 Screen cleaning systems for screens in quiescent and tidal areas**

4802 *At locations that do not have sufficient sweeping velocity, fish screens must be equipped*
4803 *with an automated cleaning system that is capable of removing debris from the body of water,*
4804 *rather than one that may merely push debris to one side or the other.*

4805 Effective cleaning systems rely on the sweeping flow, sometimes combined with the
4806 mechanical action of the cleaner, to carry the debris downstream and away from the screen face.
4807 Cleaning systems that merely push debris to the side of the screen face are inappropriate for low-
4808 velocity locations. This is because without a means to collect and remove debris, the debris
4809 lifted from the screen face is likely to become impinged again on the screen face. Additional
4810 measures are recommended in these situations to keep floating debris away from the face of a
4811 fish screen. Cleaning systems that push debris to the side of a screen are best suited for
4812 situations where sweeping flow is present that will carry any debris away from the screen.

4813 **10.5.6 Passive Screens**

4814 *A passive screen, meaning a screen without an automated cleaning system, may only be*
4815 *used when all of the following criteria are met:*

- 4816 · *The combined rate of flow at the diversion site is less than 3 ft³/s.*
- 4817 · *Sufficient ambient river velocity exists to carry debris away from the screen face.*

- 4818 · *The site is not suitable for an active screen.*
- 4819 · *Uniform approach velocity conditions exist at the screen face, as demonstrated by laboratory*
- 4820 *analysis or field verification.*
- 4821 · *The debris load is low.*
- 4822 · *A maintenance program exists that is approved by NMFS and implemented by the water*
- 4823 *user.*
- 4824 · *The screen is frequently inspected, and debris accumulations are removed as site conditions*
- 4825 *dictate.*
- 4826 · *For cylindrical screens, sufficient stream depth exists at the site to provide a water column of*
- 4827 *at least 1 screen radius around the screen surface.*
- 4828 · *The screen is designed to be easily removed for maintenance and to protect it from flood*
- 4829 *events.*

4830 **10.5.7 Screen Submergence and Clearance**

4831 *Fish screens must be submerged sufficiently to maintain adequate screen area to meet the*
 4832 *approach velocity design criteria whenever the diversion is in operation; additional*
 4833 *submergence is required in some circumstances.*

4834 If the screen area becomes exposed above the water surface this reduces the effective
 4835 screen area (Section 10.5.2). Under this condition the diversion rate must be adjusted and
 4836 maintained such that the operating approach velocity does not exceed the design approach
 4837 velocity criteria at any given time.

4838 **10.5.7.1 Vertical flat plate screens**

4839 *Fish screen facilities with flat, vertical screen panels should be designed to remain fully*
 4840 *submerged over the entire range of expected water surface elevations. Facility designs may*
 4841 *allow for vertical screen panels to become partially exposed when water surface elevation is*
 4842 *lowered so long as the operating approach velocity does not exceed the design approach*
 4843 *velocity.*

4844 **10.5.7.2 Inclined flat plate screens**

4845 *Fish screen facilities with flat plate screens installed at an incline of more than*
 4846 *20 degrees but less than 45 degrees from vertical should be designed to remain fully submerged*
 4847 *over the entire range of expected water surface elevations. The top of the screen must be*
 4848 *submerged a minimum of 1 foot at low stream design flow.*

4849 The tops of inclined flat plate screens need to be sufficiently submerged at low stream
 4850 design flow to prevent hydraulic conditions from forming at the interface between the screen and
 4851 the water surface that could trap and impinge fish.

4852 **10.5.7.3 Rotary drum screens**

4853 *For rotary drum screens, the design submergence must be between 65% and 85% of the*
 4854 *drum diameter. In many cases, stop logs may need to be installed downstream of the drum*

4855 *screens to achieve the design submergence criteria. The stop logs should be located at least two*
4856 *drum diameters downstream from the back of the drum.*

4857 Submergence levels greater than 85% of the drum diameter increase the possibility of
4858 entrainment over the top of the screen, fish impingement on the screen, and the subsequent
4859 entrainment of any fish impinged on the narrow screen area above the 85% submergence level
4860 due to the nearly horizontal angle of impact of surface-oriented fish. Submergence levels that
4861 are less than 65% may reduce the self-cleaning capability of the screen due to the inability of
4862 material to temporarily adhere to the screen face and be carried over the top of the screen. Clay
4863 (1995) recommends that submergence be between 66% and 75% of the screen diameter.
4864 Examples of rotary drum screens are shown in Figures 10-7, 10-8, and 10-9.



4865
4866 Figure 10-7. Large-sized rotary drum screen at the Sunnyside Canal located on the
4867 Yakima River near Yakima, Washington
4868 (Note: The person standing upstream of a drum and an intermediate bypass entrance. Water flow direction is from
4869 the foreground to the background of the photograph.)



4870

4871 Figure 10-8. Medium-sized rotary drum screen at the Burlingame Diversion located on the
4872 Walla Walla River near Walla Walla, Washington



4873

4874 Figure 10-9. Rotary drum screens installed in a water diversion canal and operated (i.e.,
4875 powered) by paddle wheels

4876 **10.5.7.4 Cylindrical screens**

4877 *Cylindrical screens (other than rotary drum screens) must be submerged to a depth of at*
4878 *least 1 screen radius below the minimum water surface and have a minimum of 1 screen radius*
4879 *clearance between the screen surfaces and natural or constructed features.*

4880 These clearances provide escape routes for fish to avoid the draw of water passing
4881 through the screen material.

4882 **10.5.7.5 End-of-pipe screen submergence and clearance**

4883 *All end-of-pipe screens must have adequate submergence below the water surface and*
4884 *adequate clearance from the streambed and any structure to provide an escape route for fish*
4885 *approaching the screen. For cylindrical-shaped screens, 1 screen radius or 6 inches, whichever*
4886 *is greater, is normally adequate submergence and clearance.*

4887 Submergence and clearance requirements for screens with other shapes will be
4888 determined by NMFS on a case-by-case basis. An example of an end-of-pipe screen is shown in
4889 Figure 10-10.



4890
4891 Figure 10-10. Typical end-of-pipe screen equipped with “wagon wheels” to elevate the screen
4892 off the stream bottom

4893 **10.5.7.6 End-of-pipe screen design**

4894 *All end-of-pipe screens must meet the approach velocity criteria described in*
4895 *Section 10.5.1 and should be located in areas with sweeping velocities great enough to aid in*
4896 *moving fish and debris away from the intake. All end-of-pipe screens should be oriented to take*
4897 *maximum advantage of sweeping velocity in moving fish and debris away from the screen face.*

4898 For the purposes of this document, an end-of-pipe screen is defined as a fish screen of
4899 any shape that may be attached to the end of a pipe or hose.

4900 **10.5.7.7 Horizontal flat plate screens**

4901 *Design criteria specific to horizontal screens are provided in Section 10.8.*

4902 **10.5.7.8 Conical screens**

4903 *Design criteria specific to cone screens are provided in Section 10.9.*

4904 **10.5.8 Screen Material**

4905 *Screen materials must be corrosion-resistant and sufficiently durable so as to maintain a*
4906 *smooth, uniform surface over the course of long-term use. Perforated plate surfaces must be*
4907 *smooth to the touch, with the openings punched through in the same direction as the water flow.*

4908 *Screen materials commonly used include stainless steel, aluminum, plastic, and*
4909 *antifouling alloys containing copper and other metals.*

4910 **10.5.8.1 Opening size**

4911 *The maximum screen opening allowed is based on the shape of the opening:*

- 4912 · *Circular screen face openings must not exceed 3/32 inch in diameter (Neitzel et al. 1990a).*
- 4913 · *Slotted screen face openings must not exceed 0.069 inch (1.75 millimeters [mm]) in the*
4914 *narrow direction (Mueller et al. 1995).*
- 4915 · *Square screen face openings must not exceed 3/32 inch as measured on a diagonal (Neitzel*
4916 *et al. 1990b).*

4917 **10.5.8.2 Open area**

4918 *The percent open area (porosity) for any screen material must be at least 27%.*

4919 **10.5.8.3 Gaps**

4920 *Screens and associated civil works that are exposed to fish must be constructed such that*
4921 *there are no gaps greater than 0.069 inch (1.75 mm). For traveling belt screens or other screens*
4922 *with moving screen material, screen seals must be sufficient to prevent gaps larger than*
4923 *0.069 inch (1.75 mm) from opening during screen operations.*

4924 *Clay (1995) notes that care is required in the construction, adjustment, and operation of*
4925 *rotary drum screens. The drum must be fitted carefully in the box to eliminate spaces around the*
4926 *edges that are larger than the openings in the screen mesh.*

4927 **10.5.9 Civil Works and Structural Features**

4928 **10.5.9.1 Smoothness**

4929 *All concrete and steel surfaces, including edges and corners, in areas fish have access to*
4930 *must be smooth to the touch and free from burrs and sharp edges. These can injure fish or*
4931 *people that come in contact with the structure.*

4932 **10.5.9.2 Pressure differential protection**

4933 *Larger fish screen structures should be equipped with fail-safe systems that protect the*
4934 *structure from large pressure differentials across the screen face, should the screen become*
4935 *plugged. If a fail-safe system is tripped, the diversion operation must cease until the system can*
4936 *be reset and protection from entrainment into the diversion is restored.*

4937 The fail-safe systems installed so that the structural integrity of the facility is never
4938 compromised may include governors that reduce the water diversion rate when the pressure
4939 differential exceeds a given value. Fused blow-out panels, slide gates, and pressure relief valves
4940 may also be acceptable solutions for preventing excessive pressure differentials that can result in
4941 screen facility failure.

4942 **10.5.9.3 Placement of screen surfaces**

4943 *The face of all screen surfaces must be placed flush with any adjacent screen bay, pier*
4944 *noses, and walls to the greatest extent possible.*

4945 This is needed to allow fish to have unimpeded movement parallel to the screen face and
4946 unobstructed access to bypass entrances and routes.

4947 **10.5.9.4 Structural features**

4948 *Structural features must be provided to protect the integrity of fish screens from large*
4949 *debris and to protect the facility (Bell 1991).*

4950 A trash rack, log boom, sediment sluice, and other measures may be required to protect
4951 the structural integrity of a fish screen, especially for on-river screens.

4952 **10.5.9.5 Civil works**

4953 *The civil works must be designed in a manner that prevents undesirable hydraulic effects,*
4954 *such as eddies and stagnant flow zones, that may delay or injure fish or provide predator habitat*
4955 *or openings that allow predators to access the facility.*

4956 **10.5.9.6 Canal dewatering and fish salvage**

4957 *For in-canal screens, the floor of the screen civil works must be designed to allow fish to*
4958 *be routed back to the river safely when the canal is dewatered. An acceptable fish salvage plan*
4959 *must be developed in consultation with NMFS and included in the O&M plan.*

4960 Canal dewatering and fish salvage may be accomplished via the bypass system or by
4961 using a small gate and drain pipe, or similar provisions, to drain all flow and fish back to the
4962 river.

4963

10.6 Bypass Systems

4964 Bypass systems are required for in-canal screens. This is to provide a safe and efficient
4965 means of routing fish from the area in front of the screens to the stream from which they were
4966 diverted.

4967

10.6.1 Bypass Design

4968 *Bypass systems must work in tandem with the fish screens to move all fish present (target*
4969 *and non-target species and all life stages) from the area in front of the screens and return them*
4970 *back to the stream or river (or to a holding pool, in the case of trap and haul facilities) with a*
4971 *minimum of injury and delay (Clay 1995).*

4972

10.6.2 Bypass Entrance

4973 *The bypass entrance must be located at the downstream terminus of the fish screens and*
4974 *must be designed to allow downstream migrants to easily locate and enter the bypass*
4975 *(Clay 1995). The screen and any guidewalls should naturally funnel downstream migrants and*
4976 *flow to the bypass entrance. For screens that are less than 6 feet in length and are constructed*
4977 *perpendicular to canal flow, the bypass entrance(s) may be located at either end (or both ends)*
4978 *of the screen.*

4979

10.6.2.1 Flow control

4980 *Each bypass entrance must be capable of controlling the flow rate through that entrance.*
4981 *If an orifice plate is used, the opening must have smooth, rounded-over edges.*

4982 Typically, an overflow weir is used to regulate flow through the entrance. If an orifice
4983 plate is to be used to restrict the flow rate, the opening (orifice) must be large enough to safely
4984 pass the largest fish that may be entrained into the diversion canal. For steelhead kelts, openings
4985 must be at least 8 inches in the smallest dimension.

4986

10.6.2.2 Minimum velocity

4987 *The minimum bypass entrance flow velocity should be greater than 110% of the*
4988 *maximum canal velocity upstream from the bypass entrance. At no point may flow decelerate*
4989 *along the screen face or in the bypass channel. Bypass flow amounts should be of sufficient*
4990 *quantity to ensure these hydraulic conditions are achieved whenever downstream passage is*
4991 *required.*

4992

10.6.2.3 Lighting

4993 *Lighting conditions upstream of a bypass entrance must be ambient and extend*
4994 *downstream to the structure or device controlling bypass flow. In situations where transitions*
4995 *from light to dark conditions or vice versa cannot be avoided, they should be gradual or occur at*
4996 *a point in the bypass system where fish cannot escape the bypass and return to the canal (i.e., at*
4997 *a location where bypass flow velocity exceeds fish swimming ability).*

4998 **10.6.2.4 Dimensions**

4999 *For diversions greater than 3 ft³/s, the bypass entrance must extend from the floor of the*
5000 *canal to the water surface and be at least 18 inches wide (Ruggles and Ryan [1964] as cited in*
5001 *Clay [1995]). For diversions of 3 ft³/s or less, the bypass entrance must be a minimum of*
5002 *12 inches wide. The bypass entrance must be sized to accommodate the entire range of bypass*
5003 *flow, utilizing the criteria listed in Section 10.6.*

5004 **10.6.2.5 Weirs**

5005 *For diversions greater than 25 ft³/s and where weirs are incorporated into the bypass*
5006 *entrance, the minimum water depth over the weir is 1 foot; however, a depth of 1.5 feet over a*
5007 *weir is preferred. Similarly, weir width should be a minimum of 1.5 feet; greater widths are*
5008 *preferred.*

5009 Juvenile outmigrating salmonids appear to be less reluctant to go over a weir when water
5010 depth over the weir is greater than 1 foot (Manning et al. 2005). As a general rule and based on
5011 field observations, NMFS believes that water depth over a weir should be at least 1 foot, but if
5012 additional flow is available, a depth of 1.5 feet or even 2 feet is preferred. Manning et al. (2005)
5013 reported significantly faster travel times for steelhead moving through a dam forebay when the
5014 crest of an inflatable spillway was deformed and water depth and velocity over the spillway were
5015 increased. Water depth increased from 0.13 foot to 2.4 or 3 feet, and water velocity increased
5016 from 0.2 ft/s to 3.9 or 4.6 ft/s during test replicates. Also, wider passageways are preferred; the
5017 recommended minimum width is 1.5 feet.

5018 **10.6.2.6 Intermediate bypass entrances**

5019 *The fish screen design must include intermediate bypass entrances if the design approach*
5020 *velocity is greater than 0.33 ft/s and the sweeping velocity may not convey fish to a terminal*
5021 *bypass entrance within 60 seconds, assuming that fish are transported along the length of the*
5022 *screen face at a rate equal to the sweeping velocity.*

5023 Clay (1995) notes that if the screen is extremely long, it may be advisable to place bypass
5024 entrances at intervals across the face.

5025 **10.6.2.7 Training walls**

5026 *All intermediate bypass entrances must have a training wall to guide fish into the bypass*
5027 *system.*

5028 **10.6.2.8 Flow acceleration**

5029 *All bypass entrances must be designed to gradually accelerate flow into the bypass*
5030 *entrance and between the entrance and the flow control device at a rate not to exceed 0.2 ft/s per*
5031 *linear foot.*

5032 Juvenile salmonids have been observed to resist moving with water flow that accelerates
5033 too quickly (Haro et al. 1998). Brett and Alderdice (1953), as referenced in Clay (1995),
5034 recommend a uniform acceleration rate of no more than 0.1 ft/s per linear foot.

5035 **10.6.2.9 Secondary dewatering screens**

5036 *Secondary dewatering screens must meet all design criteria (e.g., approach velocity,*
5037 *sweeping velocity, cleaning, and screening material) of the primary screens.*

5038 Secondary dewatering screens may be used within the bypass system to reduce bypass
5039 flow.

5040 **10.6.3 Bypass Conduit and System Design**

5041 **10.6.3.1 Bypass conduit**

5042 *Depending on the site-specific conditions, the bypass conduit can be either U-shaped*
5043 *flume or round pipe.*

5044 **10.6.3.2 Surface smoothness**

5045 *The interior surfaces and joints of bypass flumes or pipes must be smooth to the touch to*
5046 *provide conditions that minimize turbulence, the risk of catching debris, and the potential for fish*
5047 *injury.*

5048 Pipe joints may be subject to inspection and approval by NMFS prior to completion of
5049 the bypass. Every effort should be made to minimize the length of the bypass pipe while
5050 meeting the hydraulic criteria listed in Sections 10.6.3.4 through 10.6.3.6.

5051 **10.6.3.3 Bypass pipe diameter**

5052 *The minimum bypass pipe diameter is 10 inches.*

5053 The bypass flume or pipe diameter is a function of the bypass flow and slope, and the
5054 diameter incorporated into the bypass pipe design should achieve the velocity and depth criteria
5055 identified in Sections 10.6.3.5 and 10.6.3.6. Bypass flume or pipe hydraulic characteristics
5056 should be calculated to determine a suitable pipe diameter.

5057 **10.6.3.4 Bypass flow rate**

5058 *The minimum design bypass flow is 5% of the total diverted flow rate unless otherwise*
5059 *approved by NMFS.*

5060 While the minimum bypass flow is 5% of the total diverted, larger bypass flow
5061 proportions will aid in cleaning the fish screen and will guide fish toward the bypass system
5062 more quickly.

5063 **10.6.3.5 Bypass velocity**

5064 *Water velocity in the bypass conduit should be between 6 and 12 ft/s for the entire*
5065 *operational range of bypass flow, and must always be greater than 2 ft/s. If higher velocities are*
5066 *approved by NMFS, special attention to pipe and joint smoothness must be demonstrated by the*
5067 *design.*

5068 Bypass systems with velocities that are less than 2 ft/s can accumulate sediment deposits
5069 within the bypass system.

5070 **10.6.3.6 Water depth**

5071 *The design minimum depth of free surface flow in a bypass pipe should be at least 40% of*
5072 *the bypass pipe diameter unless otherwise approved by NMFS.*

5073 **10.6.3.7 Closure valves**

5074 *Closure valves cannot be used within the bypass system unless specifically accepted by*
5075 *NMFS.*

5076 **10.6.3.8 Pumps**

5077 *Fish should transition through bypass system components via gravity flow and never be*
5078 *pumped. Use of a pump would only be acceptable if NMFS required the installation of a bypass*
5079 *where insufficient head was available to support gravity flow.*

5080 **10.6.3.9 Downwells and flow transitions**

5081 *Downwells should be sized based on an EDF between 8 to 10 ft-lb/ft³/s. Fish must never*
5082 *free-fall within a bypass system pipe or enclosed conduit. Equation 10-1 should be used to*
5083 *calculate downwell volume.*

5084 To achieve safe and timely fish passage, downwells must be designed to produce a free
5085 water surface when turbulence, geometry, and alignment aspects of the design are considered.

5086
$$V = \frac{(\gamma)(Q_{bypass})(H)}{EDF} \quad (10-1)$$

5087 where:

- 5088 V = pool volume (ft³)
5089 γ = unit weight of water (62.4 lb/ft³)
5090 Q_{bypass} = bypass flow, in ft³/s
5091 H = height of drop between water surfaces, in feet
5092 EDF = energy dissipation factor, from 8 to 10 ft-lb/ft³/s

5093 **10.6.3.10 Pressurized flow**

5094 *Flow in all types of fish conveyance structures should be open channel (i.e., not*
5095 *pressurized). Bypass systems must be vented or open to the atmosphere. If a pressurized bypass*
5096 *conveyance is required by site constraints, pressures in the bypass pipe must remain equal to or*
5097 *above atmospheric pressures. Transitions from pressurized to non-pressurized conditions within*
5098 *a bypass pipe, and vice versa, should be avoided.*

5099 **10.6.3.11 Bends**

5100 *The ratio of bypass pipe center-line radius of curvature (R) to pipe diameter (D), or R/D,*
5101 *must be greater than or equal to 5.*

5102 In situations that involve super-critical flow velocities, R/D ratios greater than 5 may be
5103 required. Bends should be minimized in the layout of bypass systems due to their potential to
5104 facilitate debris clogging and produce turbulence. If mitered pipe fittings are used to change
5105 conveyance direction, the maximum miter angle allowed is 15 degrees (11.25 degrees is
5106 preferable). If multiple miter joints are used to change the direction of the conveyance more than
5107 15 degrees, each miter joint must be separated by length(s) of pipe that are sufficiently long to
5108 achieve the required ratio of R/D for the bend assembly as a whole.

5109 **10.6.3.12 Debris management**

5110 *Bypass pipes or open channels must be designed to minimize debris clogging, sediment*
5111 *deposition, and facilitate their inspection and cleaning as necessary.*

5112 **10.6.3.13 Access for maintenance**

5113 *Access for maintenance inspections and debris removal must be provided at locations in*
5114 *the bypass system where debris accumulations may occur. Bypass systems greater than 150 feet*
5115 *in length should include access ports at appropriate spacing to allow for the detection and*
5116 *removal of debris.*

5117 Alternate means of providing for bypass pipe inspection and debris removal may be
5118 considered by NMFS.

5119 **10.6.3.14 Natural channels**

5120 *Natural channels may be used as a bypass transit channel only upon approval by NMFS.*

5121 NLFs attempt to provide fish passage around a barrier (commonly a dam) using a more
5122 natural, river-like configuration. They do so by incorporating natural elements (e.g., rocks,
5123 boulders, and cobbles) to dissipate kinetic energy of water flow, keep velocities within a passable
5124 range for most fish, and provide resting pools (Brownell et al., undated).

5125 Use of a natural channel will require that adequate water depth and velocity, flow
5126 volume, protection from predation, and good water quality conditions can be provided. The
5127 potential for increased predation is typically extremely high for natural channels due to the high

5128 concentration of fish in a small amount of flow in the bypass system and area. Additionally,
5129 sufficient flow would be required to mitigate for any seepage occurring within the bypass system
5130 while maintaining adequate water depth and velocity.

5131 **10.6.3.15 Sampling facilities**

5132 *Sampling facilities installed in the bypass conduit must not impair the operation of the*
5133 *facility during non-sampling periods in any manner.*

5134 Refer to Appendix F for additional information on the design of juvenile fish sampling
5135 facilities.

5136 **10.6.3.16 Hydraulic jumps**

5137 *There should be no hydraulic jump(s) within a bypass system.*

5138 **10.6.4 Bypass Outfalls**

5139 **10.6.4.1 Location**

5140 *Bypass outfall locations should meet the following conditions:*

- 5141 · *Bypass outfalls must be located to minimize predation by selecting an outfall location that is*
5142 *free of eddies and reverse flow and does not place bypassed fish into an area of known*
5143 *predator habitat (Bell 1991).*
- 5144 · *The point of impact for bypass outfalls should be located where ambient river velocities are*
5145 *greater than 4 ft/s when in operation (Shively et al. 1996).*
- 5146 · *Bypass outfall locations should provide good egress conditions for juvenile fish exiting the*
5147 *bypass and re-entering the stream channel (Bell 1991).*
- 5148 · *The bypass flow must not impact the river bottom or other physical features at any stage of*
5149 *river flow. Bypass outfalls must be located where the receiving water is of sufficient depth to*
5150 *ensure that fish injuries are avoided at all river and bypass flows.*
- 5151 · *The bypass outfall must not release fish into areas where conditions downstream from the*
5152 *bypass discharge point will pose a risk of injury, predation, or stranding (Bell 1991). For*
5153 *example, bypass outfalls must avoid discharging fish into areas from which they can enter*
5154 *reaches where flows run subsurface. Also, bypass outfalls must not discharge in the vicinity*
5155 *of any unscreened water diversion or near eddies that may be habitat for predator fish.*

5156 Shively et al. (1996) integrated fish location based on telemetry and velocity based on
5157 physical hydraulic model data and found that 82% of predators tagged with radio transmitters
5158 resided in river habitats where velocity was less than 3.6 ft/s. Bypass outfalls that discharge fish
5159 into reaches where flows run subsurface can result in fish becoming stranded in pools that are
5160 isolated from the main channel under low flow conditions.

5161 **10.6.4.2 Impact velocity**

5162 *Maximum bypass outfall impact velocity (i.e., the velocity of the bypass flow as it enters*
5163 *the receiving water) should be less than 25 ft/s, including both the vertical and horizontal*
5164 *velocity components.*

5165 Impact velocity may be greater for very large bypass flows that discharge a confined jet
5166 that plunges deep into the receiving waters and results in fish deceleration occurring over a
5167 longer distance compared to a broader jet not plunging far into the receiving water. For example,
5168 Johnson et al. (2003) reported no injuries to juvenile Chinook salmon that were returned to the
5169 Columbia River in bypass flow greater than 1,000 ft³/s and when impact velocities ranged up to
5170 50 ft/s.

5171 **10.6.4.3 Predation prevention**

5172 *Predator control systems may be required in areas with a high potential for avian*
5173 *predation.*

5174 Predation suppression systems include bird wires (thin wires) strung over the bypass
5175 outfall area to prevent predatory birds from flying near the outfall or diving at fish exiting the
5176 outfall and high-pressure water spray nozzles over the outfall area to deter birds.

5177 **10.6.4.4 Adult fish attraction to bypass discharge**

5178 *Bypass outfall discharge into the receiving water must be designed to avoid attracting*
5179 *adult fish to the discharge. If the potential exists that adults may be attracted to bypass outfall*
5180 *discharge, the design of the bypass outfall must include a provision for adult fish to land safely*
5181 *in a zone or location after jumping.*

5182 **10.7 Water Drafting**

5183 Water drafting is the practice of pumping water for short durations from streams or
5184 impoundments at low pumping rates to fill water trucks or tanks, often for dust suppression or
5185 wildfire management. Water drafting may also be used to dewater a construction site or
5186 temporarily divert water around a construction site.

5187 The specifications below are primarily for the protection of juvenile anadromous
5188 salmonids in waters where they are known to exist. However, they may also be applied to
5189 protect a host of other aquatic organisms.

5190 **10.7.1 Water Drafting Operating Guidelines**

5191 *When engaged in water drafting operations, the following restrictions apply:*

- 5192 · *Operations are restricted to 1 hour after sunrise to 1 hour before sunset.*
5193 · *The pumping rate must not exceed the lesser of 350 gpm or 10% of the streamflow. The*
5194 *operator should measure streamflow prior to initiating pumping to ensure the pumping rate*
5195 *will not exceed 10% of streamflow.*

- 5196 · *Pumping should be restricted to locations where the water is deep and flowing; pumping*
- 5197 *from isolated pools must be avoided.*
- 5198 · *Pumping must not result in a noticeable drawdown of the water surface elevation in the area*
- 5199 *where pumping is taking place, nor in any riffles downstream.*
- 5200 · *Pumping must be terminated when the water truck or tank is full.*
- 5201 · *An operator must be present during pumping operations and observe stream conditions*
- 5202 *during pumping to ensure the above restrictions are being met.*
- 5203 · *A fish screen must be used when pumping. Fish screens must meet guidelines for end-of-pipe*
- 5204 *screens of this document (Section 10.5.7.5). The operator must be capable of cleaning debris*
- 5205 *from the fish screen when needed and possess the equipment necessary to do so.*

5206 **10.7.2 Fish Screens for Water Drafting**

5207 Design and operation criteria and guidelines for use of fish screens required during
 5208 pumping operations for water drafting are described in Section 10.7.2.1 through 10.7.2.6.

5209 **10.7.2.1 Design**

5210 *Fish screens for water drafting may be off-the-shelf designs or custom fabricated. The*
 5211 *fish screen must be sturdy enough to not compromise the integrity of the screen during pumping*
 5212 *when the screen becomes clogged with debris.*

5213 The screens may be cylindrical or rectangular in shape as long as the other screen criteria
 5214 are met.

5215 **10.7.2.2 Cleaning**

5216 *Fish screens for water drafting do not need to have an automated cleaning system;*
 5217 *however, an operator must regularly clean the screen during the pumping operation to maintain*
 5218 *the minimum amount of screen area that is required to not be occluded with debris.*

5219 **10.7.2.3 Approach velocity**

5220 *The design approach velocity must not exceed 0.33 ft/s.*

5221 Based on a pumping rate of 350 gpm, the screen for this flow rate should have at least
 5222 2.4 ft² of surface area.

5223 **10.7.2.4 Uniform flow**

5224 *Screens must be designed to draw water relatively uniformly over the entire screen area.*

5225 Screens may require internal baffles to achieve this criterion.

5226 **10.7.2.5 Screen porosity and openings**

5227 *The screen material must have a porosity of at least 27% and have openings consistent*
 5228 *with criteria provided in Section 10.5.8.1. The screen surface must be smooth to the touch.*

5229 The size of screen openings depends on the shape of the openings.

5230 **10.7.2.6 Screen support and submergence**

5231 *Fish screens must be supported off the stream bottom by at least 6 inches and be*
5232 *submerged by at least 6 inches (Figure 10-9).*

5233 **10.8 Special Case: Horizontal Screens**

5234 Horizontal flat plate screens operate fundamentally differently than conventional
5235 cylindrical and vertically oriented screens. This fundamental difference relates directly to fish
5236 safety. When inadequate flow depth exists with vertically oriented screens, the bypass will
5237 usually remain operational, and there is only a slight increase in the potential for fish to become
5238 impinged on the surface of the screen. In contrast, when the water level on horizontal screens
5239 drops and most or all diverted flow goes through the screens, the bypass flow is greatly reduced
5240 or ceases completely and there is a high likelihood that fish will become impinged and expire on
5241 the screen surface.

5242 **10.8.1 NMFS Engineer Involvement**

5243 *Since site-specific design considerations are required, NMFS must be consulted*
5244 *throughout the development of a horizontal screen design.*

5245 NMFS considers horizontal screens to be biologically equivalent to conventional screens
5246 if the design and operation of a horizontal screen meets the criteria and conditions listed in
5247 Section 10.8.

5248 **10.8.2 Design Process**

5249 *The horizontal screen design process must include an analysis to verify that sufficient*
5250 *hydrologic and hydraulic conditions exist within the stream so as not to exacerbate a passage*
5251 *impediment in the stream channel or in the off-stream conveyance (including the screen facility*
5252 *and bypass system). This analysis must conclude that all of the following criteria can be*
5253 *achieved for the entire fish passage season, as defined in Chapter 2. If the criteria listed here in*
5254 *Section 10.8 cannot be maintained per this design analysis, a horizontal screen design must not*
5255 *be used at the site. If this analysis concludes that the removal of the bypass flow required for a*
5256 *horizontal screen from the stream channel results in inadequate passage conditions or*
5257 *unacceptable loss of riparian habitat, other screen design styles must be considered for the site*
5258 *and installed at the site if the other screen styles will reduce the adverse effects to passage or*
5259 *riparian habitat.*

5260 **10.8.3 General Criteria**

5261 *The screen and bypass criteria specified in Chapter 10 apply to horizontal screens. The*
5262 *exceptions to these general criteria are noted in Section 10.8.4.*

5263

10.8.4 Specific Criteria

5264 As described in Section 10.8, horizontal flat plate screens are fundamentally different
5265 than conventional cylindrical and vertically oriented screens. Specific criteria and guidelines
5266 that apply only to horizontal screens are described in Sections 10.8.4.1 through 10.8.4.13.

5267 10.8.4.1 Site limitation

5268 *Horizontal screens must be installed in an off-river canal.*

5269 Due to the need for very precise hydraulic controls, horizontal screens are not suitable for
5270 in-river or in-stream installations.

5271 10.8.4.2 Flow regulation

5272 *For a horizontal screen facility to function properly, the site must provide a headgate*
5273 *facility that maintains a water diversion rate that is sufficient and consistent enough to allow the*
5274 *fish screen and bypass system to meet the criteria listed in this section (Section 10.8.4).*

5275 10.8.4.3 Channel alignment

5276 *Horizontal screens must be installed such that the approaching conveyance channel is*
5277 *parallel to, and in line with, the screen channel (i.e., there is no skew), and uniform flow*
5278 *conditions exist across the upstream edge of the screen. A straight channel should exist for at*
5279 *least 20 feet upstream of the leading edge of the screen, or for a distance of up to two screen*
5280 *channel lengths if warranted by approach flow conditions in the conveyance channel.*
5281 *Horizontal screens must be installed such that a smooth hydraulic transition occurs from the*
5282 *approach channel to the screen channel and there are no areas of abrupt flow expansion,*
5283 *contraction, or separation.*

5284 Flow conditions that require a longer approach channel include turbulent flow,
5285 supercritical hydraulic conditions, or uneven hydraulic conditions in a channel cross section.

5286 10.8.4.4 Bypass flow depth

5287 *The bypass flow must pass over the downstream end of the screen at a depth of at least*
5288 *1 foot.*

5289 10.8.4.5 Bypass flow amount

5290 *Bypass flow amounts must be sufficient to continuously provide the hydraulic conditions*
5291 *specified in this section and those specified in Section 10.6. In general, for diversion rates of*
5292 *less than 100 ft³/s, approximately 15% of the total diverted flow should be used as bypass flow.*
5293 *For diversion rates greater than 100 ft³/s, approximately 10% of the total diverted flow should*
5294 *be used for bypass flow. Small horizontal screens may require that up to 50% of the total*
5295 *diverted flow be dedicated for bypass flow. The amount of bypass flow must be approved by*
5296 *NMFS.*

5297 Bypass flow is used for transporting fish and debris across the plane of the screen and
5298 through the bypass conveyance back to the stream.

5299 **10.8.4.6 Diversion shut-off**

5300 *If hydrologic analysis demonstrates that the diverted flow rate could drop below the flow*
5301 *rate required to satisfy the diversion and supply the bypass with its full design flow rate, the*
5302 *horizontal screen design must include a means to automatically shut off the diversion flow or a*
5303 *means to route all diverted flow back to the originating stream.*

5304 **10.8.4.7 Sediment removal**

5305 *The horizontal screen design must include means to simply and directly remove sediment*
5306 *that accumulates under the screen without compromising the integrity of the screen while water*
5307 *is being diverted.*

5308 **10.8.4.8 Screen approach velocity**

5309 *Screen approach velocity must be less than 0.25 ft/s and uniform over the entire screen*
5310 *surface area. If the horizontal screen is equipped with an automated mechanical screen*
5311 *cleaning system, screen approach velocity must be less than 0.4 ft/s and uniform over the entire*
5312 *screen surface area.*

5313 The best available science regarding horizontal screens is evolving. Therefore, NMFS
5314 may require a lower approach velocity or may specify a minimum ratio of sweeping velocity to
5315 approach velocity.

5316 **10.8.4.9 Screen sweeping velocity**

5317 *Sweeping velocity must be maintained or gradually increase for the entire length of*
5318 *screen. Sweeping velocity should never be less than 2.5 ft/s or an alternate minimum velocity*
5319 *approved by NMFS that is based on an assessment of sediment load in the water diversion*
5320 *system.*

5321 Higher sweeping velocities may be required to achieve reliable debris removal and to
5322 keep sediment mobilized.

5323 **10.8.4.10 Post-construction inspection and testing**

5324 *Upon completion of screen construction and watering up of the system, velocity testing*
5325 *must be performed to ensure that approach velocity is uniform over the entire screen area. For*
5326 *the purpose of this test, uniform is defined as all test velocities falling between 90% and 110% of*
5327 *the nominal screen approach velocity. Sweeping velocity must also be verified to be in a*
5328 *uniformly downstream direction to ensure that fish and debris or bypassed rapidly.*

5329 **10.8.4.11 Monitoring and maintenance**

5330 *Daily inspection and maintenance (if required) must occur on the screen and bypass*
5331 *system to maintain operations consistent with these criteria.*

5332 **10.8.4.12 Post-construction monitoring**

5333 *Post-construction physical and operational monitoring of all components of new*
5334 *horizontal screen facilities must occur for at least the first year of operation and cover all*
5335 *periods of operation.*

5336 **10.8.4.13 Inspection log**

5337 *An inspection log must be kept for each horizontal screen. A copy of the inspection log*
5338 *must be provided annually to the NMFS design reviewer upon request, who will review the*
5339 *inspection log and may make recommendations for the next year of operation. The inspection*
5340 *log should include:*

- 5341 · *Inspection dates, times, and the observer's name*
- 5342 · *Water depth at downstream end of the screen (i.e., the entrance to the bypass)*
- 5343 · *Debris present on the screen, including any sediment retained in the screen openings*
- 5344 · *Fish observed on or passing over the screen surface*
- 5345 · *Operational adjustments and maintenance performed on the facility*

5346 **10.9 Special Case: Conical Screens**

5347 Conical (or cone) screens were developed for small water diversions in shallow tidal
5348 areas. They have been installed on pumped and gravity diversions since 1996. The conical
5349 shape provides a large amount of screen area in a small footprint (Figure 10-11). The screen
5350 units sit on a constructed steel or concrete platform connected to a diversion pipe and the screens
5351 have rotating brush cleaning systems that are driven hydraulically or by electric motors. Many
5352 units are powered with solar panels that charge a bank of batteries. Turbine-driven units, where
5353 the cleaning system is driven by a propeller installed in the conveyance pipe and mechanically
5354 connected to the cleaning system through a large gear reducer, have been used successfully in a
5355 few cases. For turbine-driven units, screen cleaning does not occur unless water is being
5356 diverted. This type of cleaning system may not be appropriate for seasonal use unless the units
5357 are removed seasonally.



5358

5359 Figure 10-11. Conical screen

5360 Conical screens were designed for use on inverted siphons in tidal areas where the screen
5361 units would be partially exposed at lower tides. Because they were used only on siphons, as the
5362 source water stage decreased and screen area on an ebb tide and screen area became exposed, the
5363 rate of diversion decreased proportionally so the operational approach velocity never exceeded
5364 the design approach velocity. As a side benefit, the daily exposure to air and sunlight helped
5365 keep the screen surface free of algal growth.

5366

10.9.1 Locations

5367 *Conical screens should be sited in locations where fish have a clear escape route past a*
5368 *screen. They should not be installed in enclosed vaults or in close proximity to a structure that*
5369 *prevents fish from freely moving away from the screen.*

5370 10.9.1.1 Maximum ambient velocity

5371 *Conical screens are acceptable for use in lakes, reservoirs, backwater channels, and*
5372 *tidal areas where the ambient velocity does not exceed 1 ft/s. They may be used where the*
5373 *current is greater than 1 ft/s if other (i.e., superior) screening alternatives are not available, an*
5374 *appropriate flow distribution baffle system is used, and the design is acceptable to NMFS.*

5375

10.9.2 Approach Velocity

5376 *The maximum design approach velocity for conical screens is 0.33 ft/s.*

5377 The minimum effective screen area required for an installation may be determined by
5378 dividing the maximum diversion rate in ft^3/s by 0.33 ft/s.

5379

10.9.3 Flow Uniformity

5380 *Conical screens come standard with an internal baffle that provides adequate flow*
5381 *uniformity over all screen area when in an environment where ambient water velocity is less*
5382 *than 1 ft/s.*

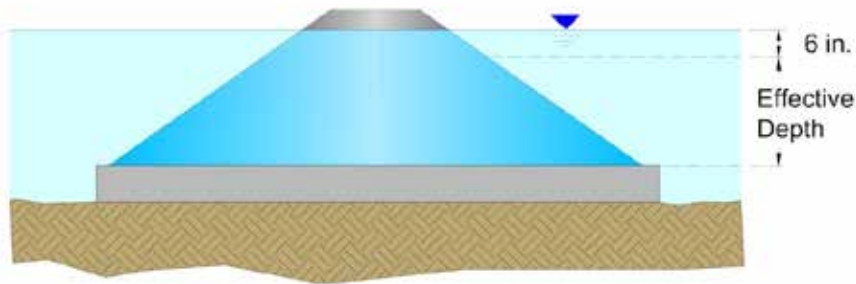
5383 For locations where ambient velocity may be greater than 1 ft/s, a riverine baffle system
5384 is also available that must be customized for the unique environmental conditions of a site
5385 (Hanna 2011).

5386

10.9.4 Effective Screen Area

5387 *All screen area submerged greater than 6 inches may be considered as effective screen*
5388 *area (Figure 10-12). If conical screens become exposed to air, the rate of diversion must be*
5389 *reduced to meet the design approach velocity criterion (Section 10.9.2) due to the reduced*
5390 *effective screen area.*

5391 When conical screens become exposed to air in tidal or backwater environments, the top
5392 6 inches of screen material below the water surface may become occluded by debris.



5393

5394 Figure 10-12. Elevation view of a conical fish screen showing the effective depth

5395

10.9.5 Submergence

5396 *Conical screens may be operated while partially exposed above water but must be*
5397 *designed such that the screen is sufficiently submerged to maintain adequate effective screen*
5398 *area for the rate of diversion at any given moment.*

5399 The definition of effective screen area is provided in Section 10.5.2.

5400

10.10 Project Inspections and Evaluations

5401

10.10.1 General

5402 *Inspections and evaluations must be performed at each appropriate phase of a project.*
5403 *This includes during construction, when the project is substantially complete but not yet*
5404 *operating, and after construction.*

5405 Inspections of project details and evaluations of project systems are necessary to ensure
5406 that a fish screen project functions as intended.

5407 **10.10.2 Quality Assurance and Quality Control**

5408 *An on-site project engineer or inspector must be assigned to every project. The inspector*
5409 *must provide notice to NMFS of key milestones in the construction process and access to the site*
5410 *for inspections.*

5411 The inspector is responsible for ensuring construction specifications and tolerances are
5412 met and for testing all project systems. NMFS should be allowed to witness testing of project
5413 systems.

5414 **10.10.3 Inspection**

5415 **10.10.3.1 During construction**

5416 *During the course of construction, activities may preclude various facets of screen and*
5417 *bypass construction from being inspected. In instances where these facets of construction may*
5418 *pose a risk of injury or mortality to fish later on during normal operations, the on-site engineer*
5419 *or inspector must inspect these items prior to construction continuing. In some instances, NMFS*
5420 *may require that a NMFS inspector be given the opportunity to inspect these items prior to*
5421 *construction continuing. If this is the case, NMFS will provide the project proponent with a list*
5422 *of screen and bypass elements that will require NMFS inspection during the course of*
5423 *construction. These may include (but are not limited to) the following:*

- 5424 · *Bypass pipe joints, either welded or mechanical*
- 5425 · *Bypass downwells*
- 5426 · *Bypass outfalls, if protected during construction by a cofferdam*
- 5427 · *Any components that convey water that may contain fish*

5428 **10.10.3.2 Facilities near completion**

5429 *Nearly completed fish screen and bypass facilities must be made available to NMFS staff*
5430 *for inspection prior to watering up to verify that the screen is operable in a manner consistent*
5431 *with the design criteria. NMFS staff may inspect construction quality, pipe joints, fit, and finish*
5432 *of components exposed to fish.*

5433 **10.10.4 Evaluations**

5434 At some sites, screen and bypass facilities may need to be evaluated for biological
5435 effectiveness and to verify that hydraulic design objectives are achieved and debris removal
5436 systems are effective. At the discretion of NMFS, this may entail a complete biological
5437 evaluation, especially if waivers to screen and bypass criteria are granted, or merely a visual
5438 inspection of the screen in operation if the screen is relatively simple and designed and
5439 constructed to the standard criteria listed throughout the chapters of this document.

5440 **10.10.4.1 Mechanical and electrical systems evaluations**

5441 *Testing of mechanical and electrical systems should be performed before initiating*
5442 *operations.*

5443 This should include testing of any alarm systems, including audible alarms, pagers, and
5444 other warning systems; data recording equipment, emergency shut-off systems, cleaning
5445 systems, actuators, and solenoids; backup systems; and other mechanical and electrical systems.
5446 These evaluations should be included in a list of final items to be completed by the contractor
5447 and carried out prior to contractor demobilization and should be written into the construction
5448 contract.

5449 **10.10.4.2 Automatic cleaning systems evaluations**

5450 *Cleaning systems and their components should be tested in the dry, when possible, and*
5451 *again when screen facilities are operable, but prior to initiating normal operations.*

5452 Using O&M documentation of the cleaning systems provided by the designer or
5453 fabricator, all cleaning systems should be tested in automatic and manual operating modes.
5454 These evaluations should be included in a list of final items to be completed by the contractor
5455 and carried out prior to contractor demobilization and should be written into the construction
5456 contract.

5457 **10.10.4.3 Biological evaluations**

5458 *Depending on the size of a project, any variances from established criteria, and the*
5459 *complexity and uniqueness of the project design, NMFS may require that biological evaluations*
5460 *be conducted on a fish screen facility. The biological evaluations may involve monitoring fish*
5461 *that naturally inhabit the site or releasing test fish obtained from another source such as a*
5462 *hatchery. If biological evaluations are required, the applicant must submit a biological*
5463 *evaluation study plan to NMFS for review and approval prior to completing a substantial*
5464 *portion of the project. Biological evaluations must be performed by qualified personnel using*
5465 *established methodologies.*

5466 The biological evaluations could include monitoring to assess the number of fish being
5467 injured or delayed, entrained behind the fish screen, impinged on the fish screen and evidence of
5468 fish predation associated with the water intake structure. The biological evaluation study plans
5469 should describe the source of fish, test equipment and methodologies that will be used; the
5470 statistical analysis that will be conducted and associated precision of any tests; and the proposed
5471 frequency, timing, and duration of any monitoring and testing.

5472 **10.10.4.4 Juvenile fish bypass systems**

5473 *Hydraulic testing of juvenile fish bypass systems is required to create rating curves for*
5474 *gate openings needed to achieve prescribed flow rates, and to ensure that the bypass system*
5475 *hydraulics conform to hydraulic design criteria.*

5476 *Biological testing of juvenile bypass systems may be required to ensure that juvenile fish*
5477 *are being returned safely to the main river channel. If biological evaluations are required, the*
5478 *applicant must submit a biological evaluation study plan to NMFS for review and approval prior*
5479 *to completing a substantial portion of the project. Biological evaluations must be performed by*
5480 *qualified personnel using established methodologies.*

5481 The study plan should consider the complexity of the bypass system and the size and
5482 number of juvenile fish likely to be present during water diversion operations.

5483 **10.10.4.5 Fish screen hydraulic evaluations**

5484 The hydraulic evaluations described in this section are required for fish screen facilities.
5485 Appendix E (Performing Hydraulic Evaluations) provides information on how to conduct
5486 hydraulic evaluations.

5487 *Hydraulic evaluations are required on all screens equipped with adjustable flow tuning*
5488 *baffles designed to distribute flow evenly over all wetted screen areas, and where confirmation*
5489 *of hydraulic conditions at a fish screen is necessary. The applicant must submit a hydraulic*
5490 *evaluation study plan to NMFS for review and approval prior to completing a substantial*
5491 *portion of the project. The final hydraulic evaluation should be conducted under the high design*
5492 *(diversion) flow unless otherwise agreed to by NMFS.*

5493 Hydraulic evaluations involve taking water velocity measurements at locations that are
5494 oriented both perpendicular (i.e., the approach velocity) and parallel (i.e., the sweeping velocity)
5495 to the screen face. Hydraulic evaluations are used on screen facilities with flow-balancing
5496 baffles to adjust the baffles to achieve uniform approach velocities across all wetted screen
5497 surfaces. Baffle systems should be adjusted in this manner prior to initiating normal water
5498 diversion operations. The hydraulic evaluation plan should include the proposed equipment,
5499 methodologies, and time schedule that will be used when conducting the hydraulic evaluations.

5500 *In the event that hydraulic conditions are found by NMFS to be unacceptable and the*
5501 *existing baffle system is incapable of adjusting flows to meet the hydraulic criteria, physical*
5502 *modifications to the facility may be required along with follow-up hydraulic evaluations of the*
5503 *modified hydraulic conditions.*

5504 *Hydraulic evaluations should be carried out as soon as practical to ensure the facility is*
5505 *operating as near to design criteria as practical using the guidelines described in Appendix E. If*
5506 *the facility cannot be operated at an optimal diversion rate for the hydraulic evaluation within*
5507 *the first year of operation, the facility owner should seek to extend the deadline for carrying out*
5508 *the hydraulic evaluation from NMFS.*

5509 *Hydraulic evaluations must be performed by qualified personnel using established*
5510 *methodologies.*

5511 *A final hydraulic evaluation report must be provided to NMFS that includes the*
5512 *following:*

- 5513 · *A description of site and environmental conditions at the time of testing*

- 5514 · *A list of technicians performing tests*
- 5515 · *The materials and methods employed in the test, including locations of all velocity*
- 5516 *measurements in the final iteration of baffle adjustments, including justification of the*
- 5517 *number of points at which velocity measurements were taken*
- 5518 · *A description of the final baffle settings*
- 5519 · *The approach and sweep velocity data for all measured points in the final iteration of baffle*
- 5520 *adjustments presented in a table format*
- 5521 · *The approach and sweeping velocity values for all measured points in the final iteration of*
- 5522 *baffle adjustments presented in a graphical format*
- 5523 · *An objective evaluation of hydraulics at the site and anticipated screen performance*

5524 **10.11 Operations and Maintenance Plans**

5525 **10.11.1 General**

5526 *All fish screen projects must have an approved O&M plan. The plan should include*
 5527 *procedures deemed acceptable by NMFS for operating the screen facility under a variety of*
 5528 *environmental conditions, the full range of water diversion operations, and the procedures for*
 5529 *periodic inspections and maintenance required to achieve fish screening effectiveness over the*
 5530 *design life of the facility.*

5531 The purpose of an O&M plan is to ensure that the facility performs as designed and is
 5532 providing effective fish screening over the life of the project. The O&M plan is the manual that
 5533 describes exactly how the fish screen facility will be operated and maintained as well as
 5534 procedures and personnel to contact in the event of emergencies. The following guidelines
 5535 provide a template that can be used to prepare an O&M plan.

5536 **10.11.2 Operations**

5537 *The O&M plan should include procedures that will ensure the fish screen meets all*
 5538 *previously agreed to criteria. In addition to normal operation conditions, the plan should*
 5539 *include information, procedures (including fish salvage plans), and personnel contact*
 5540 *information in case of emergencies.*

5541 The O&M plan should include the seasonal maximum diversion rates agreed to in the
 5542 design process, other criteria identified in the project description, project mitigation measures,
 5543 and any applicable permit conditions or ESA Biological Opinion requirements. Additionally, the
 5544 plan should address specific criteria on pump use at pumped diversions and gate use at gravity
 5545 diversions that are required to achieve uniform approach velocities across screen surfaces.

5546 **10.11.2.1 Posting**

5547 *A list of operating procedures that is easy to follow should be posted in a highly visible*
 5548 *location at the water diversion site.*

5549 The list should include specific operating procedures needed to achieve uniform approach
 5550 velocities across the screen face at various diversion rates. Emergency power cut-off switches,

5551 pressure relief valves, instructions for operating any auxiliary equipment, and emergency
5552 shutdown procedures should also be placed in locations that are easily found.

5553 **10.11.3 Maintenance**

5554 *The diversion owner should incorporate maintenance procedures recommended by the*
5555 *designers, contractors, and suppliers into the O&M plan.*

5556 The maintenance section of the O&M plan should specify the frequency and interval for
5557 performing each maintenance procedure. The project owner is responsible for obtaining
5558 documentation (including specifications and maintenance requirements) from suppliers of off-
5559 the-shelf and custom systems and equipment and ensuring that all necessary maintenance
5560 equipment, tools, and component parts are readily available and on-hand for the maintenance.
5561 The O&M manual should identify activities that need to be carried out on a periodic basis (e.g.,
5562 daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, annually, or another periodic schedule).

5563 **10.11.4 Maintenance Records**

5564 *The facility owner should maintain a log of O&M activities, which should be made*
5565 *available upon request of appropriate federal and state agencies. The logbook should include*
5566 *the following:*

- 5567 · *One copy of the operating procedures list discussed above (Section 10.11.2)*
- 5568 · *One copy of the periodic maintenance schedule discussed above (Section 10.11.3)*
- 5569 · *Records of regularly scheduled and unscheduled maintenance procedures performed*

5570 **10.11.5 Periodic Visual Inspections**

5571 *The project owner, or their agent, should perform visual inspections of the screens on an*
5572 *annual basis or more frequently if required to ensure design criteria are being met. Inspectors*
5573 *should examine cleaning system performance, structural integrity of the screen area, fish-*
5574 *exclusion integrity of seals and transition areas, and other factors affecting screen facility*
5575 *performance. Inspectors should determine if the current maintenance procedures are sufficient*
5576 *to ensure that screen performance will continue to meet the facility's design criteria into the*
5577 *future.*

5578 Guidelines for conducting periodic inspections are as follows:

- 5579 · Auditing maintenance records:
 - 5580 – Review the O&M logbook to identify any recurring problems.
 - 5581 – Compare logged records with the O&M plan to ensure the plan is under compliance
 - 5582 and note any areas that need troubleshooting.
- 5583 · Inspecting underwater components:
 - 5584 – Check for gaps at joints and seams that could compromise screen efficiency.
 - 5585 – Note any accumulation of debris.
 - 5586 – Inspect screen material for damage and material integrity.
 - 5587 – Check screens and structural members for corrosion, wear, or other deterioration.

- 5588 - Check sacrificial anodes and replace if necessary.
- 5589 - Check screen hold-down plates and other protrusions from the screen face for damage
- 5590 and debris accumulation.

- 5591 · Witness cleaning system operations:
 - 5592 - Intentionally foul the fish screen with locally available materials if possible and view
 - 5593 the efficiency of the screen cleaning system.
 - 5594 - Inspect spray orifices for fouling and erosion and whether the water or air spray
 - 5595 systems need to be enlarged.
 - 5596 - Inspect screen faces for undulations in the screen material that may reduce cleaning
 - 5597 efficiency (i.e., for traveling brush systems).
 - 5598 - Inspect screen cleaning brushes for wear and deterioration (e.g., for traveling brush
 - 5599 systems).
 - 5600 - Inspect seals for wear and deterioration.
 - 5601 - Assess the overall efficiency of the cleaning system and identify any recommended
 - 5602 solutions in the inspection report.
 - 5603 - Inspect underwater moving parts for corrosion and damage.

- 5604 · Inspect the morphology of the stream channel in the immediate vicinity of the project for
- 5605 debris, erosion, and sedimentation that may potentially damage screens and their supporting
- 5606 structures or adversely affect screen operation and effectiveness.
- 5607 · If warranted, measure water velocities perpendicular to the screen face to determine flow
- 5608 uniformity over all screen surfaces. Above normal debris accumulation in small areas may
- 5609 indicate approach velocities exceed the design criteria in those locations. Excessively high
- 5610 approach velocities can result in debris accumulation. If the accumulation is not addressed in
- 5611 a timely manner it may result in less efficient water withdrawal and eventual damage to the
- 5612 screen material or its structure.
- 5613 · Test backup systems and alarms that could include the following:
 - 5614 - Pump shut-off controls
 - 5615 - Blow out panels
 - 5616 - Mechanical brush shut-off system controls
 - 5617 - Screen cleaning system failure alarms

5618

11 Operations and Maintenance

5619

11.1 Introduction

5620

The design criteria and guidance provided in the Guidelines were developed to produce a high level of effectiveness and reliability at installed fish passage and protection facilities.

5622

Achieving this requires that these facilities be operated and maintained properly to optimize their performance in accordance with the design objectives of the facility. Failure to do so is a key concern of NMFS. This is because insufficient attention to the operational and maintenance aspects of a facility can compromise its fish passage effectiveness and result in fish injury and mortality.

5623

5624

5625

5626

5627

This chapter addresses O&M issues in general and describes the components needed in a facility O&M plan. Where necessary, other chapters of this document will also address O&M issues that apply specifically to the topics covered in those chapters (e.g., Chapters 5 and 10).

5628

5629

5630

11.2 General Criteria

5631

Passage and screening facilities at barriers, diversions, water intakes, traps, and collection facilities must be operated and maintained in accordance with the O&M plan over the entire life of the project. This is needed to meet the mechanical design and biological objectives of the facility and the goal of providing optimal conditions for fish that result in successful passage (i.e., no mortality and minimal injury and delay).

5632

5633

5634

5635

5636

NMFS requires that facility owners and operators commit to accepting responsibility for installing and properly operating, maintaining, and repairing the fish passage facilities described in the Guidelines. This is to ensure that: 1) fish affected by the facility are protected in a manner that is consistent with the intended performance of the facility based on its design; and 2) fish protection is provided on a sustained basis. For example, the proper function and operation of a fish passage facility would need to be restored immediately after damage from flooding and prior to the arrival of migratory fish, including repairing damaged structures and removing accumulated gravel and sediment.

5637

5638

5639

5640

5641

5642

5643

5644

Where facilities are inadequately operated or maintained, and the injury or mortality of listed fish can be documented, the responsible party is liable to enforcement measures as described in Section 9 of the ESA.

5645

5646

5647

11.3 Specific Criteria – Staff Gages

5648

Staff gages must be installed and maintained at critical locations throughout the facility.

5649 Staff gages allow personnel to quickly determine if the facility is being operated within
5650 the established design criteria. Staff gage locations will be identified in the O&M plan.

5651 **11.4 The O&M Plan**

5652 This section describes how O&M plans are developed and approved and their contents.

5653 **11.4.1 O&M Plan Development and Approval**

5654 *The O&M plan for a facility must be submitted to and accepted by NMFS prior to*
5655 *initiating project construction. The design of facilities should be made in consideration of O&M*
5656 *requirements and vice versa. Therefore, O&M plans need to be developed during the planning*
5657 *and design processes and must be reviewed and approved by NMFS at this time, along with*
5658 *project design documents.*

5659 For new facilities, it is recommended that a description of intended operations be
5660 obtained from the designer and then incorporated into the O&M plan. Such a description is often
5661 referred to as the “designer’s intent.”

5662 The complexity of the O&M plan should reflect the complexity of the facility it
5663 addresses. For example, a facility with complex components, narrow operating requirements,
5664 and sophisticated water control systems will require a detailed plan that addresses all of the
5665 components, systems, and operational scenarios. This should include potential emergency
5666 scenarios, including the identification of spare parts for essential components that need to be on
5667 hand in case of failure.

5668 **11.4.2 Group O&M Plans**

5669 *Comprehensive O&M plans for a group of projects will satisfy the requirement for an*
5670 *O&M plan for each project in the group as long as NMFS is in agreement with the O&M of the*
5671 *passage facilities.*

5672 Examples of group projects include road maintenance plans for culverts and small screen
5673 facilities within a network of water diversions.

5674 **11.4.3 General**

5675 *The O&M plan must include the following criteria, procedures, and staffing*
5676 *requirements.*

5677 **11.4.3.1 Facility operating criteria**

5678 *The O&M plan must list the facility operating criteria. This includes (but is not limited*
5679 *to) criteria for water levels at critical locations, gate operations, gate settings, how the system is*
5680 *adjusted to accommodate changes in forebay and tailwater levels, and inspection procedures*
5681 *and frequency (e.g., daily, monthly, and annually).*

5682 **11.4.3.2 Procedures**

5683 *The O&M plan must include a description of routine O&M procedures. In addition, the*
5684 *O&M plan should include procedures for dewatering the facility, salvaging fish during a*
5685 *dewatering event, sediment and debris removal, and emergency operations.*

5686 Procedures, such as dewatering plans, fish salvage plans, and emergency operations, can
5687 have a direct impact on the survival of fish in the facility. It is important that these procedures be
5688 incorporated into O&M plans and operators are familiar with them in order to minimize any
5689 adverse impacts.

5690 **11.4.3.3 Staffing requirements**

5691 *The O&M plan must discuss the staffing requirements needed to support the O&M plan,*
5692 *including the hours staff are required to be on site to monitor and operate the facility. The*
5693 *staffing requirement component of the plan should incorporate automatic controls and telemetry*
5694 *into the O&M plan and facility that notify operators of problems to increase overall reliability of*
5695 *the facility.*

5696 **11.4.4 Posting the O&M Plan**

5697 *The O&M plan must be posted at the facility or otherwise made available to the facility*
5698 *operator. Operators should be familiar with and understand the O&M plan and operate the*
5699 *facility accordingly.*

5700 It is important that the O&M plan be available and easily accessed by the facility operator
5701 should questions or emergency situations arise.

5702 **11.4.5 Periodic Review of O&M Plans by NMFS**

5703 *Operations and maintenance documents should be reviewed and revised (with NMFS*
5704 *involvement) annually for the first 3 years of operation and then periodically after that as*
5705 *conditions and operations dictate.*

5706 NMFS intends that O&M plans be “living” documents. O&M documents should be
5707 revised periodically as the owner and operator develop more experience with a new facility.
5708 This is important because over time, experience will be gained as to how the facility performs
5709 under various hydrologic and environmental conditions, and ideas on how to improve the O&M
5710 of the facility will develop. For example, it is important that facility owners and operators note
5711 areas in the O&M plan that are deficient or need revision.

5712

12 References

- 5713 AECOM (AECOM, Inc.). 2009. Upper Baker Floating Surface Collector Field Verification Testing –
5714 Spring 2009. Draft report prepared for Puget Sound Energy, Bellevue, Washington, dated May
5715 2009. Document No.:05570-053-0410.
- 5716 Barnard, R. J., J. Johnson, P. Brooks, K. M. Bates, B. Heiner, J. P. Klavas, D.C. Ponder, P.D. Smith, and
5717 P. D. Powers. 2013. Water Crossings Design Guidelines, Washington Department of Fish and
5718 Wildlife, Olympia, Washington.
- 5719 Bates, K. 1992. Fishway Design Guidelines for Pacific Salmon. Washington Department of Fish and
5720 Wildlife, Olympia, Washington.
- 5721 Bell, M.C. 1991. Fisheries Handbook of Engineering Requirements and Biological Criteria. Fish
5722 Passage and Development Evaluation Program, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Portland, Oregon.
- 5723 Blackett, R. 1987. Development and Performance of an Alaska Steppass Fishway for Sockeye Salmon
5724 (*Oncorhynchus nerka*). Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Science 44:66-76.
- 5725 BOR (U.S. Bureau of Reclamation). 2006. Fish Protection at Water Diversions: A Guide for Planning
5726 and Designing Fish Exclusion Facilities. Water Resources Technical Publication U.S.
5727 Department of the Interior, Bureau of Reclamation, Denver, Colorado.
- 5728 Bottom, D., K. Jones, C. Simenstad, and C. Smith. 2011. Reconnecting Societal and Ecological
5729 Resilience in Salmon Ecosystems. Oregon Sea Grant Report ORESO-B-11-001. In Pathways to
5730 Resilience; Sustaining Salmon Ecosystems in a Changing World Ecology and Society 14(1):5.
- 5731 Brett, J., and D. Alderdice. 1953. Research on Guiding Young Salmon at Two British Columbia Field
5732 Stations. Bulletin No. 117, Fisheries Research Board of Canada.
- 5733 Brett, J.R., M. Hollands, and D.F. Alderdice. 1958. The effects of temperature on the cruising speed of
5734 young sockeye and coho salmon. Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 15:587-605.
- 5735 Brownell, P., S. McDermott, A. Haro, F. Rohde, J. Johnson, A. Blott, B. Rizzo, Undated. Diadromous
5736 Fish Passage: A Primer on Technology, Planning, and Design for the Atlantic and Gulf Coasts.
5737 Available from NOAA National Marine Fisheries Service Southeast Region, Habitat
5738 Conservation Division.
- 5739 CDFG (California Department of Fish and Game). 2002. Culvert Criteria for Fish Passage, California
5740 Department of Fish and Game, May 2002.
- 5741 Cech, J., P. Young, C. Swanson, M. Levent Kavvas, Z. Chen, and H. Bandeh. 2001. Fish Treadmill-
5742 Developed Fish Screen Criteria for Native Sacramento-San Joaquin Watershed Fishes, Final
5743 Report, CALFED Bay/Delta Program, CALFED Project 99-N02.
- 5744 Clay, C.H. 1961. Design of Fishways and Other Fish Facilities. Department of Fisheries of Canada,
5745 Queen's Printer, Ottawa, Canada.

- 5746 Clay, C.H. 1995. Design of Fishways and Other Fish Facilities. Second Edition. Boca Raton: CRC
5747 Press.
- 5748 Collins, G.B. 1976. Effects of Dams on Pacific Salmon and Steelhead Trout. Marine Fisheries Review
5749 38(11):39-45.
- 5750 Cooper, R.M. 2005. Estimation of Peak Discharges for rural, Unregulated Streams in Western Oregon:
5751 U.S. Geological Survey Scientific Investigations Report 2005-5116, 134 p.
- 5752 DOI (U.S. Department of Interior). 1987. Design of Small Dams. 3rd Edition. Water Resources
5753 Technical Publications, Washington D.C.
- 5754 EPRI (Electric Power Research Institute). 1994. Fish Protection/Passage Technologies Evaluated by
5755 EPRI and Guidelines for Their Application. EPRI TR-104120s.
- 5756 FERC (Federal Energy Regulatory Commission). 1995. Impacts of Hydroelectric Plant Tailraces on Fish
5757 Passage: A Report on Effects of Tailraces on Migratory Fish and Use of Barriers, Modified
5758 Project Operations, and Spills for Reducing Impacts. Paper No. DPR-9. Office of Hydropower
5759 Licensing, Washington, D.C.
- 5760 Gauley, J., C. Weaver, and C. Thompson. 1966. Research on Fishway Problems May 1960 to April
5761 1965. Third Progress Report on Fisheries Engineering Research Program, North Pacific
5762 Division. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Portland, Oregon.
- 5763 Gotvald, A.J., N.A. Barth, A.G. Veilleux, and C. Parrett. 2012. Methods for Determining Magnitude and
5764 Frequency of Floods in California, Based on Data Though Water Year 2006. U.S. Geological
5765 Survey Scientific Investigations Report 2012-5113. Available online only at
5766 <http://pubs.usgs.gov/sir/2012/5113/>.
- 5767 Hanna, L. 2011. ISI Cone Screen Performance in a Riverine Environment, PAP-1037. U.S. Department
5768 of Interior, Bureau of Reclamation, Technical Service Center, Hydraulic Investigations &
5769 Laboratory Services, Denver, Colorado.
- 5770 Hanski, I. 1998. Metapopulation dynamics. Nature 396:41-49.
- 5771 Haro, A., M. Odeh, J. Noreika, and T. Castro-Santos. 1998. Effect of water acceleration on downstream
5772 migratory behavior and passage of Atlantic salmon smolts and juvenile American shad at surface
5773 bypasses. Trans. Am. Fish. Soc. 127:118-127.
- 5774 Hevlin, W., and S. Rainey. 1993. Considerations in the Use of Adult Fish Barriers and Traps in
5775 Tributaries to Achieve Management Objectives. Pages 33-40 in K. Bates, compiler. Fish
5776 Passage Policy and Technology. Bioengineering Section, American Fisheries Society, Bethesda,
5777 Maryland.
- 5778 Hilborn, R., T.P. Quinn, D.E. Schindler, and D.E. Rogers. 2003. Biocomplexity and fisheries
5779 sustainability. Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. 100:6564-6568.
- 5780 HSRG (Hatchery Scientific Review Group). 2009. Report to Congress on Columbia River Basin
5781 Hatchery Reform.
- 5782 Johnson, G., B. Ebberts, D. Dauble, A. Giorgi, P. Heisey, R. Mueller, and D. Neitzel. 2003. Effects of
5783 jet entry at high-flow outfalls on juvenile Pacific salmon. North American Journal of Fisheries
5784 Management 23:441-449.

- 5785 Katopodis, C. 1992. Introduction to Fishway Design. Freshwater Institute, Central and Artic Regions,
5786 Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Winnipeg, Manitoba, Canada.
- 5787 Lang, M., and M. Love. 2014. Comparing Fish Passage Opportunity Using Different Fish Passage
5788 Design Flow Criteria in Three West Coast Climate Zones. Contract Report for National Marine
5789 Fisheries Service. Humboldt State University and Michael Love & Associates, Inc., Arcata,
5790 California, August 2014.
- 5791 Larinier, M., F. Travade, and J. Porcher. 2002. Fishways: biological basis, design criteria and
5792 monitoring. *Bulletin Français de la Pêche et de la Pisciculture* 364 suppl.:135-146.
- 5793 Larinier, M., and F. Travade. 2002. The design of fishways for shad. *Bulletin Français de la Pêche et de*
5794 *la Pisciculture* 2002 364 suppl.:135-146.
- 5795 Lindley, S.T., R.S. Schick, E. Mora, P.B. Adams, J.J. Anderson, S. Greene, C. Hanson, B. May,
5796 D. McEwan, R.B. MacFarlane, C. Swanson, and J.G. Williams. 2007. Framework for Assessing
5797 the Viability of Threatened and Endangered Chinook Salmon and Steelhead in the Sacramento-
5798 San Joaquin Basin. *San Francisco Estuary and Watershed Sciences* 5:1. Available at
5799 <http://repositories.cdlib.org/jmie/sfews/vol5/iss1/art4>.
- 5800 Love, M., and K. Bates. 2009. Part XII: Fish Passage Design and Implementation. California Salmonid
5801 Stream Habitat Restoration Manual. California Dept. of Fish and Game. 188 pages.
- 5802 Manning, D., J. Mann, R. Benkert, S. Chase, and S. White. 2005. Steelhead emigration in a seasonal
5803 impoundment created by an inflatable rubber dam. *North American Journal of Fisheries*
5804 *Management* 25:1239-1255.
- 5805 McClure, M., T. Cooney, and M. Marvier. 2001. Assessing the role of dams in salmon recovery. *Hydro.*
5806 *Rev.* 20:36-45.
- 5807 McElhany, P., M. Ruckelshaus, M. Ford, T. Wainwright, and E. Bjorkstedt. 2000. Viable Salmonid
5808 Populations and the Recovery of Evolutionarily Significant Units. NOAA Technical
5809 Memorandum NMFS-NWFSC-42. Available online at <http://www.nwfsc.noaa.gov/publications/>.
- 5810 McLaughlin, R., A. Hallett, T. C. Pratt, L.M. O'Connor, and D.G. McDonald. 2007. Research to guide
5811 use of barriers, traps, and fishways to control sea lamprey. *J. Great Lakes Res.* 33:27-19.
- 5812 Mooney, D., C. Holmquist-Johnson, and E. Holburn. 2007. Reclamation Managing Water in the West:
5813 Qualitative Evaluation of Rock Weir Field Performance and Failure Mechanisms. U.S. Bureau of
5814 Reclamation, Technical Service Center, Denver, Colorado.
- 5815 Mueller, R., D. Neitzel, and C. Abernethy. 1995. Fisheries Evaluation of the Dryden Fish Screening
5816 Facility. Project No. 1985-06200, Prepared by the Pacific Northwest Laboratory for the Division
5817 of Fish and Wildlife, Bonneville Power Administration, Portland, Oregon. BPA report DOE/BP-
5818 00029-2.
- 5819 Neitzel, D., C. Abernethy, and E. Lusty. 1990a. A Fisheries Evaluation of the Westside Ditch and
5820 Wapato Canal Fish Screening Facilities, Spring 1989. Prepared by the Pacific Northwest
5821 Laboratory for the Division of Fish and Wildlife, Bonneville Power Administration, Portland,
5822 Oregon.
- 5823 Neitzel, D.A., C.S. Abernethy, and E.W. Lusty. 1990b. A Fisheries Evaluation of the Wapato,
5824 Sunnyside, and Toppenish Creek Canal Fish Screening Facilities, Spring 1988. Prepared by

- 5825 Pacific Northwest Laboratory, Richland, Washington, for U.S. Department of Energy, Bonneville
5826 Power Administration, Yakima, Washington.
- 5827 NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service). 2001. Guidelines for Salmonid Passage at Stream
5828 Crossings. National Marine Fisheries Service Southwest Region. September 2001. Available at:
5829 [http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/publications/hydropower/fish_passage_at_stream_crossi](http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/publications/hydropower/fish_passage_at_stream_crossings_guidance.pdf)
5830 [ngs_guidance.pdf](http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/publications/hydropower/fish_passage_at_stream_crossings_guidance.pdf).
- 5831 NMFS. 2014. Public Final Recovery Plan for the Evolutionary Significant Units of Sacramento River
5832 Winter-run Chinook Salmon and Central Valley Spring-run Chinook Salmon and the Distinct
5833 Population Segment of Central Valley Steelhead. Sacramento Protected Resources Division,
5834 Sacramento, California.
- 5835 Northcote, T.G. 1998. Migratory Behavior of Fish and Its Significance to Movement through Riverine
5836 Fish Passage Facilities. Fish Migration and Fish Bypasses. In: Fish Migration and Fish Bypasses.
5837 Blackwell Science Ltd. Publishers, Oxford, U.K.
- 5838 NRC (National Research Council). 1996. Upstream: Salmon and Society in the Pacific Northwest.
5839 National Academy Press, Washington, D.C.
- 5840 NRCS (Natural Resources Conservation Service). 2007. Technical Supplement 14A. Part 654 National
5841 Engineering Handbook. Soil Properties and Special Geotechnical Problems Related to Stream
5842 Stabilization Projects. Available online at:
5843 <http://directives.sc.gov.usda.gov/OpenNonWebContent.aspx?content=17810.wba>.
- 5844 Peterson, D., and P. Mohanty. 1960. Flume Studies of Flow in Steep, Rough Channels. Journal of the
5845 Hydraulic Division. Proceedings of the American Society of Civil Engineers Vol. 86:55-76.
- 5846 Powers, P., and J. Orsborn. 1985. New Concepts in Fish Ladder Design: Analysis of Barriers to
5847 Upstream Fish Migration, Volume IV of IV. Investigation of the Physical and Biological
5848 Conditions Affecting Fish Passage Success at Culverts and Waterfalls. Project No. 198201400,
5849 BPA Report DOE/BP-36523-1.
- 5850 Quinn, T.P. 2005. The Behavior and Ecology of Pacific Salmon and Trout. Seattle: University of
5851 Washington Press.
- 5852 Rajaratnam, N., and C. Katopodis. 1984. Hydraulics of Denil Fishways. J. Hydraul. Eng.
5853 110(9):1219-1233.
- 5854 Rideout, S., L. Thorpe, and L. Cameron. 1985. Passage of American Shad in an Ice Harbor style fish
5855 Ladder after Flow Pattern Modifications. Proceedings of the Symposium on Small Hydropower
5856 and Fisheries, pages 251-256. F. Olsen, R. White, and R. Hamre, editors. Published by the
5857 American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.
- 5858 Roff, D.A. 1992. The Evolution of Life Histories: Theory and Analysis. New York: Chapman and Hall.
- 5859 Ruckelshaus, M.H., P.S. Levin, J.B. Johnson, and P. Kareiva. 2002. The Pacific salmon wars: what
5860 science brings to the challenge of recovering species. Annual Review of Ecology and
5861 Systematics 33:665-706.
- 5862 Ruggles, C.P., and P. Ryan. 1964. An Investigation of Louvers as a Method for Guiding Juvenile Pacific
5863 Salmon. Department of Fisheries Canada, Vancouver, British Columbia.
- 5864 Sayre, W., and M. Albertson. 1963. Roughness spacing in rigid open channels. Transactions of the
5865 American Society of Civil Engineers 128(1):343-371.

- 5866 Schindler, D.E., R. Hilborn, B. Chasco, C.P. Boatright, T.P. Quinn, L.A. Rogers, and M.S. Webster.
5867 2010. Population diversity and the portfolio effect in an exploited species. *Nature* 465:609-613.
- 5868 Senn, H., J. Mack, and L. Rothfus. 1984. Compendium of Low-cost Pacific Salmon and Steelhead
5869 Production Facilities and Practices in the Pacific Northwest. Project No. 83-353. Report to the
5870 Bonneville Power Administration, Portland, Oregon.
- 5871 Shively, R.P., T.P. Poe, and M.B. Sheer. 1996. Criteria for reducing predation by northern squawfish
5872 near juvenile salmonid bypass outfalls at Columbia River dams. *Regulated Rivers: Research and*
5873 *Management* 12:493-500.
- 5874 Slatick, E. 1975. Laboratory evaluation of a Denil-type steep pass fishway with various entrance and exit
5875 conditions for passage of adult salmonids and shad. *Marine Fisheries Review* 37(9):17-26.
- 5876 Slatick, E., and C. Wagner. 1989. Criteria for a Velocity-Barrier Dam for Migrating Adult Salmonids.
5877 Northwest and Alaska Fisheries Center, Seattle, Washington.
- 5878 Smith, L., and L. Carpenter. 1987. Salmonid Fry Swimming Stamina Data for Diversion Screen Criteria.
5879 Final Report, Fisheries Research Institute, University of Washington, Seattle, Washington.
- 5880 Stanford, J.A., J.V. Ward, W.J. Liss, C.A. Frissell, R.N. Williams, J.A. Lichatowich, and C.C. Coutant.
5881 1996. A General Protocol for Restoration of Regulated Rivers. *Regulated Rivers: Research &*
5882 *Management* 12(4-5):391-413.
- 5883 Stewart, R. 2003. Techniques for Installing a Resistance Board Fish Weir. Regional Information Report
5884 No. 3A03-26. Alaska Dept. of Fish and Game, Anchorage, Alaska.
- 5885 Taylor, E.B. 1991. A review of local adaptation in Salmonidae, with particular reference to Pacific and
5886 Atlantic salmon. *Aquaculture* 98:185-207.
- 5887 Thompson, C., W. Davis, and E. Slatick. 1967. Response of Migrating Adult Salmonids to Vertical and
5888 Horizontal Rectangular Orifices at Two Depths. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Special Scientific
5889 Report No. 547.
- 5890 Tobin, J. 1994. Construction and Performance of a Portable Resistance Board Weir for Counting
5891 Migrating Adult Salmon in Rivers. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Alaska Fisheries Technical
5892 Report Number 22.
- 5893 USFWS (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service). 1960.
- 5894 Wagner, C. 1967. Fish Barrier Dams: Fish Facilities Section Memo Dated August 23, 1967. Columbia
5895 Fisheries Program Office, Bureau of Commercial Fisheries, Portland, Oregon.
- 5896 Waples, R.S. 1991. Definition of "species" under the Endangered Species Act: Application to Pacific
5897 Salmon. U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
5898 Technical Memorandum. NMFS F/NWC-194.
- 5899 Ward, J., and J. Stanford. 1979. *The Ecology of Regulated Streams*. New York: Plenum Press.
- 5900 WDFW (Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife). 2000. Fishway Guidelines for Washington
5901 State. Draft Report dated April 25, 2000. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife,
5902 Olympia, Washington.
- 5903 Weaver, C., C. Thompson, and E. Slatick. 1976. Fish Passage Research at the Fisheries-Engineering
5904 Research Laboratory May 1965 to September 1970. Report No. 32 In: Fourth Progress Report

- 5905 On Fisheries Engineering Research Program, 1966-1972. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, North
5906 Pacific Division, Portland, Oregon.
- 5907 Weaver, C. 1963. Influence of water velocity upon orientation and performance of adult migrating
5908 salmonids. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Fish. Bull. 63:97-121.
- 5909 World Commission on Dams. 2000. Dams and Development: and New Framework for Decision-
5910 making. London: Earthscan Publications.
- 5911 Yoshiyama, R.M., E.R. Gerstung, F.W. Fisher, and P.B. Moyle. 1996. Historical and Present
5912 Distribution of Chinook Salmon in the Central Valley Drainage of California. In: Sierra Nevada
5913 Ecosystem Project: Final Report to Congress, Volume III. Centers for Water and Wildland
5914 Resources, University of California, Davis. Davis, California, pp. 309-361.
- 5915 Ziemer, G. 1962. Steeppass Fishway Development. Information Leaflet 12. Alaska Department of Fish
5916 and Game.
- 5917 Zimmerman, C.E., and L.M. Zabkar. 2007. Weirs, Chapter 6 in Salmonid Field Protocols Handbook, pp
5918 385-398. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.